教辅资料站

电子教辅　试卷练习
知识总结　备课资源

扫码关注获取更多学习资料

教师用书 配套使用 非卖品

荣德基 主编

中国品牌创新发展工程
推荐品牌

典中点

综合应用创新题 典中点

一本在做题中教会你学习方法的书



六年级英语 上

内含 基础默写卡 名师划重点

PEP版（人教PEP版） 三年级起点

微信扫一扫 线上学习平台

经典好题·精妙点拨

荣德基官网：你的专属课件包 你的海量资源库

“典点”：一本在做题中教会你学习方法的练习册

“典中点”——做最好的自己，将优秀变成卓越，成就独特与超然，是其初心；帮老师教学、教学生方法、让家长放心，是其使命；不断创新，追求超值，获得惊喜与认可，是其动力。

当你拿到本书，“1书+1册+1卷”的三位一体结构，“知识+方法+素养”的能力训练目标，定能让你事半功倍！





1书



1册



1卷



练能力，培素养，重巩固

- 练透基础，练通题型
- 听说读写，解题有法
- 核心素养，边练边悟

抓考点，破难点，促提升

- 明确必会知识点
- 警示常考易错点
- 解决重难丢分点

模拟考，找差距，不丢分

- 实战演练，成竹在胸
- 查漏补缺，每分必争



- 与授课同步，1课1练
- 对点练习，题好题新
- 能力素养，以练代教

- 必记知识梳理
- 课堂精华提炼
- 教材重点透析

- 标准试卷，高质实用
- 活页试卷，方便好用
- 单元期末，全程可用



提分有术

考试题型全覆盖，听说读写全在手

辅有依据

知识点、重难点、易错点，一目了然

心中有数

通过错题锁定差距，让分数见证进步

荣德基老师做客央视《对话新时代》栏目



扫描二维码，观看完整视频

- **主持人朱迅对荣德基老师说：**

作为家长，最希望的是能买到对的书，因为孩子的学习精力特别有限，如果对孩子是非常有帮助的教辅，我们家长都愿意递到他们手中。

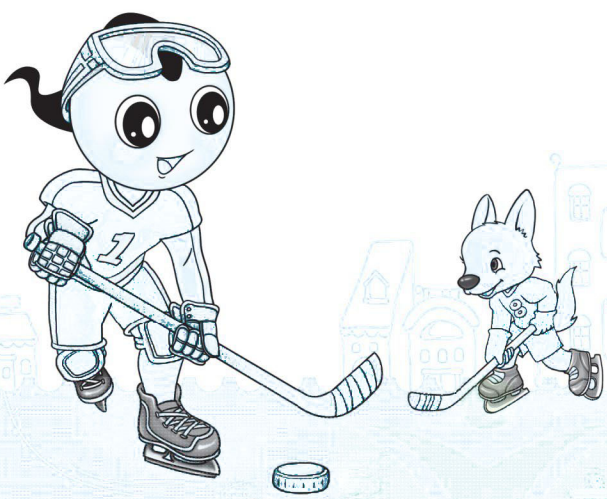
十年树木，百年树人。有情怀的人才可以做“教育”。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

荣德基 主编

综合应用创新题

一本在做题中教会你学习方法的书



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

目录

Unit 1 How can I get there?



Part A Let's try ~ Let's talk ····· 1
Part A Let's learn ~ Make a map and talk ····· 2
周末主题素养练（一） ····· 3

Part B Let's try ~ Let's talk ····· 5
Part B Let's learn ~ Be a tour guide ··· 6
Part B Read and write ~ Let's wrap it up ····· 7
Part C Story time ····· 9
周末主题素养练（二） ····· 10

Unit 2 Ways to go to school



Part A Let's try ~ Let's talk ····· 12
Part A Let's learn ~ Write and say ··· 13
周末主题素养练（一） ····· 14

Part B Let's try ~ Let's talk ····· 16
Part B Let's learn ~ Role-play ····· 17
Part B Read and write ~ Let's wrap it up ····· 18
Part C Story time ····· 20
周末主题素养练（二） ····· 21

Unit 3 My weekend plan



Part A Let's try ~ Let's talk ····· 23
Part A Let's learn ~ Make a plan ····· 24
周末主题素养练（一） ····· 25

Part B Let's try ~ Let's talk ····· 27
Part B Let's learn ~ Role-play ····· 28
Part B Read and write ~ Let's wrap it up ····· 29
Part C Story time ····· 31
周末主题素养练（二） ····· 32

Recycle 1

阶段复习练 Units 1 ~ 3 ····· 34

Unit 4 I have a pen pal



Part A Let's try ~ Let's talk ····· 36
Part A Let's learn ~ Do a survey ··· 37
周末主题素养练（一） ····· 38

Part B Let's try ~ Let's talk ····· 40
Part B Let's learn ~ Listen, match and say ····· 41
Part B Read and write ~ Let's wrap it up ····· 42
Part C Story time ····· 44
周末主题素养练（二） ····· 45

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Contents 目录

Unit 5 What does he do?



Part A Let's try ~ Let's talk ····· 47
Part A Let's learn ~ Listen, match and say ····· 48
周末主题素养练（一） ····· 49
Part B Let's try ~ Let's talk ····· 51
Part B Let's learn ~ Write and discuss ····· 52
Part B Read and write ~ Let's wrap it up ····· 53
Part C Story time ····· 55
周末主题素养练（二） ····· 56

Unit 6 How do you feel?



Part A Let's try ~ Let's talk ····· 58
Part A Let's learn ~ Write and say ····· 59
周末主题素养练（一） ····· 60
Part B Let's try ~ Let's talk ····· 62
Part B Let's learn ~ Play card games ····· 63
Part B Read and write ~ Let's wrap it up ····· 64
Part C Story time ····· 66
周末主题素养练（二） ····· 67

Recycle 2

阶段复习练 Units 4 ~ 6 ····· 69

基础默写卡

Unit 1 基础默写卡
Part A ····· 71
Part B ····· 71
Unit 2 基础默写卡
Part A ····· 72
Part B ····· 72
Unit 3 基础默写卡
Part A ····· 73
Part B ····· 73
Unit 4 基础默写卡
Part A ····· 74
Part B ····· 74
Unit 5 基础默写卡
Part A ····· 75
Part B ····· 75
Unit 6 基础默写卡
Part A ····· 76
Part B ····· 76

活页检测卷（见夹卷87 ~ 118）

Unit 1 达标检测卷
Unit 2 达标检测卷
Unit 3 达标检测卷
期中检测卷
Unit 4 达标检测卷
Unit 5 达标检测卷
Unit 6 达标检测卷
期末检测卷

参考答案及点拨 ····· 77

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

题有千变万化 我有妙法拆招

——本书题型解题方法示例

小学《典中点》英语再度全新升级，为大家带来了解题良方——解题的方法。有方法，解题快，不丢分！更多绝招请大家在书中寻找哦。



阅读理解

四、阅读短文，完成任务。

Everyone needs to know the rules of the road. To cross the road, look left and right. Please walk on the zebra crossing. You can take your friends' hands when you cross the road.Don't play or run on the road. Always watch out for the cars and buses. Don't play beside the cars. When you...

(　　) 1. The word"rules"means_____.

A.规则　B.方法　C.方向

方法点拨：本题用概括推断法。

rules单词所在的句子为本段文字的主题句。阅读后可知短文讲的都是交通规则，所以rules的意思为“规则”。

句意填空

一、读一读，选词填空。（可重复使用）

be　am　is　are

1. Today_____my birthday. I_____very excited.
2. My father_____a good basketball player.

方法点拨：本题用歌谣记忆法。

I后am，you后are，is跟着他（he），她(she)，它(it)。单数is，复数are。to后，情态（will，can）后用原形就是be。

单项选择

二、读一读，选一选。

2. I like_____. I_____like English.
   A. read;too
   B. Chinese;also
   C. sing;also

方法点拨：本题用排除法。

like后应接动名词，经观察可见A和C选项都为动词原形，不符合题意，正确答案为B。

听力测试

二、Sam这周日要和家人、朋友去不同的地点，听一听，根据他的计划为下列场所排序。



(　　)



(　　)

方法点拨：本题用三步两遍听音法。

方法点拨：本题用三步两遍听音法。第一步：看题，弄懂题目要求。第二步：第一遍听音，边听边做，注意捕捉关键信息。第三步：第二遍听音，边做边检查。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

How can I get there?

课时 1 Part A Let's spell & Part B Let's learn

☞(点拨见 77 页)

一、读一读，根据图片内容猜一猜，写出词汇。

1. They want to buy a book. They are in the bookstore.
2. Let's buy a postcard. Let's go to the post office.
3. Let's watch the animals at the zoo.
4. There are many robots in the museum.



二、读一读， 选一选。【全书导学号 1423494】

(A) 1. I _____ buy a book.
A. want B. want to C. wants

(A) 2. It's next _____ the park.
A. to B. / C. from

(B) 3. A _____ robot!
A. talk B. talking C. talks

(C) 4. Excuse me, _____.
A. boy B. man C. sir

(C) 5. You can _____ the letter at the post office.
A. give B. have C. send

三、读一读，为下列图片选择正确的描述。

(写序号)



(3)



(1)



(4)



(2)

1. The new library is near the post office.
2. She is near the window.
3. He is talking to a robot.
4. The park is beside our school.

四、读一读， 按要求完成句子。

1. The park is near the zoo.(对画线部分提问)
Where is the park?
2. There is a library near the museum.(改成一般疑问句)
Is there a library near the museum?
3. The museum is great.(改为感叹句)
What a great museum!
4. He to buy a wants postcard(连词成句)
He wants to buy a postcard.
5. the museum Where is shop(连词成句)
Where is the museum shop?

五、读一读， 选择正确的句子补全对话， 将其序号填入题号后的横线上。

A: 1. D Can you help me?
B: Sure. What's wrong with you?
A: I'm lost. 2. C
B: It's near Dongfeng Park.
A: 3. E
B: No, it's near. 4. B
A: Thank you very much.
B: 5. A

A. You are welcome.
B. Excuse me.
C. Where is the new museum?
D. I can show you the way.
E. Is it far from here?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

单元练 2 Part A Let's learn–Make a map and talk

☞（点拨见 77 页）

一、读一读， 选出与画线单词同类的一项。

(B) 1. Where is your school?
A. there B. what C. next

(C) 2. It's near the house.
A. zoo B. city C. beside

(A) 3. Do you have a pet?
A. robot B. want C. excuse

(C) 4. There is a big park in my city.
A. library B. school C. behind

(A) 5. I like science.
A. music B. great C. ask

二、根据语境及图片提示填空， 补全句子。

1. There is a new _____. Let's see a film at it.



2. I want to buy some interesting storybooks. Let's go to the _____.



3. There is a _____ _____. You can buy some postcards and stamps. And you can send letters there.



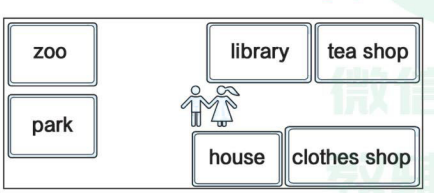
4. My father is not well. We will take him to the _____ to see a doctor.



5. There is a new art _____ in our city. We can see many gre at pictures in it.



三、根据图片提示补全对话。



A: Is there a park here?

B: 1. _____.

A: 2. _____ is it?

B: It's near the 3. _____.

A: There is a 4. _____ next to the library.

B: Yes, do you want to buy any tea?

A: No. I want to buy a new dress. Is there a 5. _____ near your house?

B: Yes. Let's go there.

A: Great!

四、阅读短文，完成任务。

My home is on Yuhua Street. It's next to a big supermarket. We often go shopping at the supermarket in the evening. Near the supermarket, there is a pet hospital. There is a bus stop near it. We can take Bus 301 to the park. It's far from the bus stop. We like to fly a kite at the park on Saturday. Beside the park, there is a zoo. There are many animals at the zoo. You can see tigers and elephants. And there is a panda. It's very cute.

1. The big supermarket is on _____ Street.

2. The pet hospital is _____ (near far from) my home.

(B) 3. There is a _____ near the pet hospital.
A. park B. supermarket C. zoo

(C) 4. The park is _____.
A. near the bus stop
B. near my home
C. next to the zoo

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

(点拨见 77 页)

话题 讨论场所及其位置。

词汇点

场所名称	方位介词	重要句式
science museum, post office, bookstore, cinema, hospital, park, zoo, library	next to, near, beside, behind, in front of, between, on	Where is ...? It's near/ next to/ beside/...

能力素养 能够准确认识常见场所的英语名称，并能够使用方位介词简单描述其位置。

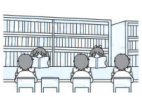
听力训练

一、Jenny 和 Danny 在谈论他们的周末活动计划， 听一听， 他们想去哪里?

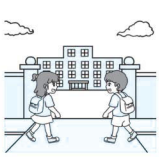
(B) 1. A. 

B. 

(A) 2. A. 
B. 

(B) 3. A. 
B. 

二、Sam 这周日要和家人、朋友去不同的地点，听一听，根据他的计划为下列场所排序。


(1)


(2)



(4)


(3)

三、Danny 在向朋友们介绍他周末要去的场所的位置， 听一听， 找出和 Danny 的介绍内容相符的一项。

(C) 1. A. Danny's house is near the new pet hospital.
B. Danny's house is far from the English school.
C. Danny's house is next to the big bookstore.

(C) 2. A. The bookstore is behind the cinema.
B. There is a new museum beside the cinema.
C. There is a cinema next to the zoo.

(B) 3. A. The zoo is near the museum.
B. The library is near the zoo.
C. The library is next to the museum.

四、Jenny 用猜谜的方式告诉同学自己和家人周末要去哪里， 请你读一读， 来帮她的同学说出答案吧。

1. First, we will go there. There are many books. We can buy our favourite books. It's the b_____.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2. Then, we want to go to this place. It's big. There are many trees and flowers in it. We can play together. And we can have a picnic. It's the p____.
3. Next, we want to go to this place. It's wonderful. We can see lots of robots there! It's the s____ m____.
4. In the evening, we want to go there. We can eat fries and popcorn. We want to see the funny film. It's the c____.
5. We don't want to go there. We can see doctors and nurses there. It's the h____.

五、下面是 Jenny 和她的朋友周末活动计划的一部分，请读一读，寻找恰当的信息。

We want to have a happy weekend. In the morning, we want to go to the bookstore. It's far from our school. But it's near our houses. We can walk there. We like reading books. We want to buy some books there. Then go straight from the bookstore, and turn left at the traffic lights. We can see a big park on our right. We want to read books and play football at the park. And we want to have a picnic there. In the afternoon, we will go to the science museum. It's next to the big restaurant. We can have fun there.

（一）从以下地点中找出他们要去的场所并标明序号。



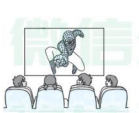
（ 1 ）


（ ）


（ 3 ）


（ 2 ）

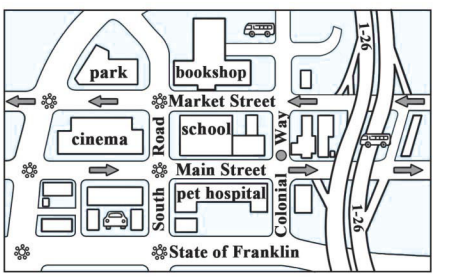

（ ）


（ ）

（二）根据以上内容判断正（T）误（F）。

（ T ）1. Our houses are near our school.
（ F ）2. We want to read books at the bookstore.
（ T ）3. We want to have a picnic at the park.
（ T ）4. We will be happy at the science museum.

六、根据下面的地图，简单介绍一下 Jenny 的城市。提示：请介绍出几处重要的地点及其位置。



Our school is on the Market Street. There is a bookshop near our school. In front of our school, there is a cinema. And a park is over the cinema. We like to play in the park. There is a pet hospital near our school, too. You can visit your pet there.

口语测评

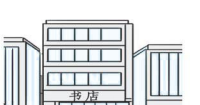
七、请根据 Jenny 和她的朋友周末计划要去的地点图，仿照例子准确地说出她们的周末计划。

例：

（post office; buy a postcard）
Where is the post office?
I want to buy a postcard.

1. 

（cinema; see a film）

2. 

（bookstore; buy a book）

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 3 Part B Let's talk

☞(点拨见 77 页)

一、读一读，为下列单词找到“朋友”(同类词)。

Italian interesting pizza get restaurant

1. salad pizza 2. park restaurant

3. Chinese Italian 4. go get

5. great interesting

二、读一读， 选一选。

(B) 1. _____ can I get to the park?

A. Where B. How C. What

(A) 2. Let's turn left _____ the cinema.

A. at B. with C. in

(C) 3. It's an _____ storybook.

A. great B. good C. interesting

(B) 4. It's _____ the zoo.

A. next B. next to C. far

三、读一读，判断以下句子内容与图片是否相符，相符写 T，不相符写 F。

(T) 1. Let's go to the Italian restaurant.



(T) 2. The bookstore is near the hospital.



(F) 3. Let's turn left.



(F) 4. What a great cinema!



四、根据汉语提供的语境选择正确的句子。

(C) 1. 当你感叹今天是个炎热而晴朗的天气时，你会说：

A. What's the weather like today?

B. The weather is hot and sunny.

C. What a hot, sunny day!

(B) 2. 你想知道怎么才能到新开的书店，你会说：

A. Where is the new cinema?

B. How can we get to the new bookstore?

C. There is a new bookstore near here.

五、读一读，选择正确的句子补全对话。

A: 1. _____ Let's buy some drinks.

B: I'm hot. I want to eat some ice cream.

A: 2. _____

B: That's great! Let's go there. 3. _____

A: It's near Happy Cinema.

B: 4. _____

A: Yes.

B: 5. _____

A: Turn right there.

B: OK. Let's go!

A. How can we get there?
B. I'm thirsty.
C. Is it on Yonghua Street?
D. I know a good fast-food restaurant .
E. Where is it?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

单元练 Unit 6 Let's learn–Let's have a try

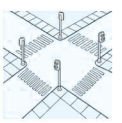
☞（点拨见78页）

一、读一读，判断句子中画线的两个单词是否为同一类，同类写 T，不同类写 F。

(T) 1. There is a restaurant near the museum.
(F) 2. We are beside Beihai Park.
(F) 3. He wants to be a tour guide.
(T) 4. You can see the cinema near the park.
(T) 5. It's behind the park and beside the bookstore.

二、根据图片提示，将所给字母按正确顺序排列，写出单词，补全句子。

1. The restaurant is near the crossing (c r s s n g o i).



2. We can turn left (l f t e) here.



3. We can't turn (t r n u) right (r g h t i) here.



4. Can we go straight (s t r g h t a i) here?

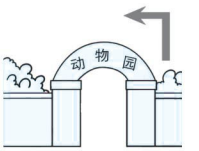


三、根据图片及句子的提示，写出问句或答句，完成对话。（一空一词）

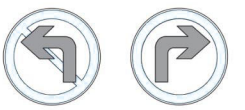
1. — Where is the hospital?
—It's next to the school.



2. —How can we get to the park?
— Turn left at the zoo.



3. —Can we turn left here?
—No, we can't turn right.



四、观察下面的简易街景地图， 完成任务。

flower shop	toy shop	hospital
post office	clothes shop	A. ?
park	science museum	B. ?

1. There is a toy shop next to the hospital.
Yes No

2. There is a park near the hospital. Yes No

3. The science museum is next to the post office.
Yes No

4. There is a post office opposite（在对面） the flower shop.

5. There is a science museum near the park.

6. I'm at the park. How can I get to the hospital?
Go straight and turn right at the clothes shop.

7. I'm at the flower shop. Go straight and turn right at the post office. Then I turn left at the clothes shop. I can see the bookstore on my right. The bookstore is (A B).

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 5 Part B Section A (3a-3c) & Section B (1a-1c)

☞(点拨见 78 页)

一、读一读， 将下列单词放入正确的组别中，并再写出一个与之同类的词汇。

follow	restaurant	pizza
tell	cinema	salad

park restaurant cinema bank

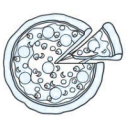
noodles pizza salad rice

ask follow tell go

二、根据图片提示， 选择第一题中正确的单词补全句子。

1. 

2. 

3. 

4. 

1. There is a new restaurant near here.
2. The cinema is near the zoo.
3. Let's eat some pizza .
4. Let's follow the GPS. It can help us find the new museum.

三、读一读，选一选。

(B) 1. My grandpa _____ me a book. I like it very much.
A. give B. gave C. giving

(C) 2. The hospital is in front of our school. The school is _____ the hospital.
A. beside B. between C. behind

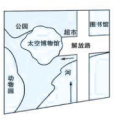
(A) 3. Let's _____ left and then go straight.
A. turn B. turning C. to turn

(A) 4. The telephone doesn't _____ today. I can't call my friends.
A. work B. have C. feature

(B) 5. I want to _____ something about the holiday to my grandma.
A. go B. tell C. turn

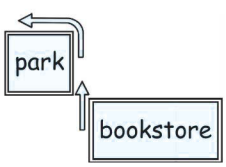
四、为下列句子选择正确的图片。

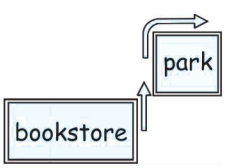
(A) 1. Read the map first. It can help you find the place.

A. 

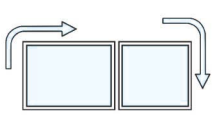
B. 

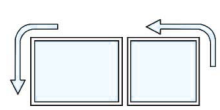
(B) 2. The museum is far from here. We can go straight from the bookstore and then turn right at the park.

A. 

B. 

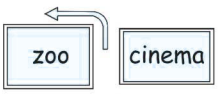
(A) 3. Let's turn right and then turn right again.

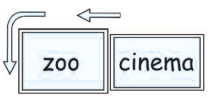
A. 

B. 

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

( ) 4. We are in front of the cinema. Let's go straight and turn left at the zoo.

A. 

B. 

五、按要求完成句子。

1. near park post office (用给出的词汇写出一个完整的句子)

The park is near the post office.

2. Turn left and then go straight. You can see the zoo. (写出对应的问句)

How can I get to the zoo?

3. He is in front of the restaurant. (对画线部分提问)

Where is he?

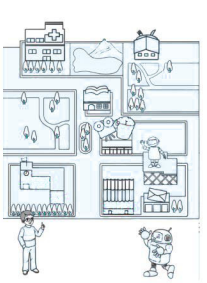
4. The hospital is next to the cinema. (对画线部分提问)

Where is the hospital?

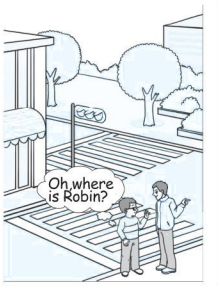
5. The new science museum is far from here. (改为一般疑问句)

Is the new science museum far from here?

六、观察下面的图片，完成任务。



A: Hey, Robin. Where is the science museum?
B: It's near the library.
A: I see. How can I get there?
B: Turn right at the school. Then go straight.
A: OK. Let's go.



A: Excuse me. Can you help me?
C: Sure.
A: How can I get to the science museum?
C: It's over there.
A: Thanks.

1. Where does Wu Yifan want to go?

He wants to go to the science museum.

2. How does Wu Yifan get there?

From right at the school. Then go straight.

3. It's not (near far from) here.

七、阅读对话，判断下列描述是否正确，正确圈 Yes，不正确圈 No。

Sam: Excuse me, could you tell me the way to the bus stop?
Policeman: Which bus do you want to take?
Sam: I want to take No. 3 Bus.
Policeman: Oh, it's near. Just go straight down this street and turn left at the crossing.
Sam: How long will it take me to get there?
Policeman: It's about ten minutes.
Sam: By the way, what time is it now?
Policeman: It's 10: 45.
Sam: Oh, I must get to the cinema before 11: 30. I must hurry up. Thank you.
Policeman: You're welcome.

1. Sam wants to go to the library. Yes (No)
2. The policeman doesn't know how to get to the bus stop. Yes (No)
3. The bus stop is near here. (Yes) No
4. There is only one bus stop near here. Yes (No)

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

第四课时 Part C Story time

基础练

一、请根据课本中的故事完成以下任务。（教材第11页）

（一）Quiz time。请快速判断以下句子是(Yes)否(No)与故事内容相符。

1. Zip and Zoom want to visit the London Eye. Yes No √
2. There is a science museum next to the London Eye. Yes No √
3. The London Eye is near the Thames. Yes No √
4. Zoom eats a lot. Yes No √
5. Zip wants to eat *tanghulu*. Yes No √

（二）根据故事内容完成以下行动线路。

1. —Where can I buy one?



—Near the London Eye.

Go that way.

2. —Where is the London Eye?



—It's next to the science museum near the Thames.

3. —Where is the Thames?



—Go straight and turn left.

4. —May I help you?

—Yes. Three large portions and one small one, please.



（三）英国文化知多少。（选择恰当的一项）

(B) 1. The London Eye is _____.

A. very big and short
B. very big and tall
C. very small and short

(A) 2. The Thames is _____.

A. 

B. 

C. 

提高练

二、阅读对话，完成任务。

Girl: Excuse me, sir. How can I get to the Suzhou Museum?

Man: It's not too far. Do you want to walk or take a bus?

Girl: I want to go there on foot.

Man: Go straight down the street. Turn right at the third traffic lights, and go straight for about 100 meters. The museum is on your left.

Girl: Thank you so much!

Man: You're welcome!

(B) 1. The girl wants to go to _____.

A. take a bus
B. the Suzhou Museum
C. the Suzhou Park

(C) 2. The girl _____.

A. is in London
B. knows Suzhou a lot
C. is in Suzhou now

(ABC) 3. When we are lost, we can _____. （多选）

A. ask other people the way
B. read a map
C. use Baidu Map on our mobile phone

微信公众号 教辅资料站

单元知识梳理

主题语境 问路与指路。

知识内容

与问路指路相关的词汇	与问路指路相关的短语	重要句式
ask, tell, follow, give, sir, interesting, Italian restaurant, pizza, street, GPS, feature...	turn left, turn right, go straight, at the crossing	How can we get...? Turn left/Turn right at...

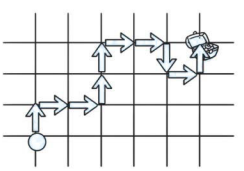
能力素养 能够得体地问路，能够简单描述路线。

能够得体、礼貌地向他人寻求帮助；了解有关问路、指路的方法。

单元检测

听力训练

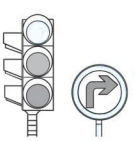
一、Danny 在和同学们玩找宝藏的游戏。请听一听，根据 Danny 的指令，在“藏宝图”上走一走，画出路线。（注：第一步已给出，每步一格）



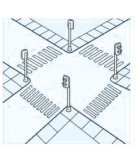
二、Danny 要带同学去实地“探宝”，听一听，下面的图片与 Danny 的描述一致吗？一致写 T，不一致写 F。

(F) 1. 

(T) 2. 

(T) 3. 

(T) 4. 

(T) 5. 

三、Tom 提出了很多问题，你来帮 Danny 找到合理的回应吧。

(C) 1. A. It's near our school.
B. Let's go to the park.
C. I want to go to the zoo.

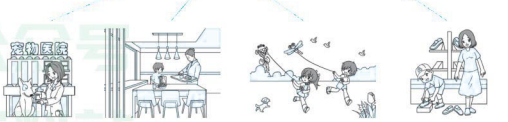
(A) 2. A. Yes, there is.
B. It's behind our school.
C. The library is not far.

(B) 3. A. It's in front of the restaurant.
B. Turn right at the cinema.
C. What a great restaurant!

(B) 4. A. Go straight at the traffic lights.
B. No, it's near.
C. Let's go there in the morning.

四、Danny 的朋友们也有自己的活动安排，听一听，将人物与相关的图片连起来。

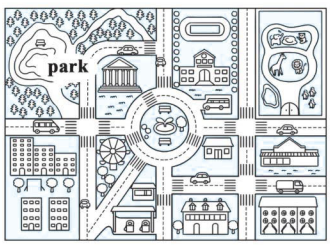
1. Lisa　2. Tony　3. Tom　4. Lucy



A　B　C　D

微信公众号 教辅资料站

五、这是 Danny 他们要使用的地图。请根据地图的内容判断正（T）误（F）。



(F) 1. The park is near our school.
(T) 2. Go straight from our school and turn left at the second crossing. The museum is on your right.
(F) 3. There is a bookstore near our school.
(T) 4. The restaurant is next to the bookstore.
(F) 5. Go straight from the bookstore. Then turn right. You can see the cinema on your right.

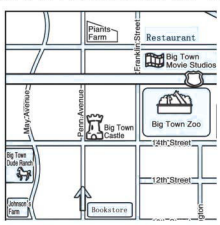
六、读一读 Danny 和同学的对话，帮助他们选择正确的选项完成对话。

Tom: 1. B
Danny: Let's go to the nature park to play.
Tom: Great! 2. D
Danny: It's on the Ninth Street.
Tom: 3. C
Danny: Yes, it's not near.
Tom: 4. E
Danny: Go straight and turn right at the bookstore. 5. A
Tom: Oh, we'll go there by bus. That's great!

A. There is the bus stop.
B. Where do you want to go?
C. How can we get there?
D. Where is it?
E. Is it far from our school?

七、读一读 Danny 的同学的活动安排，画出路线图，并在地图上标出目的地。

I want to go to the new restaurant with my friends this Sunday. Where is the restaurant? It's on Franklin Street. We can meet at the bookstore on Sunday morning. Then we can go straight from the bookstore and turn right at the Big Town Castle. Then we can turn left at the crossing and go straight. After two crossings, we can see the restaurant on the right.



八、你想去哪里度过你的周末呢？它离你家或者学校远吗？要怎样走才能到呢？请写出你的活动路线或计划。

My Weekend

This weekend, I want to go to the library with my parents. It's near my house. We can go straight from our house and turn right at the second traffic light. Then we can see the library on our right. We can read interesting books there. In the afternoon, we want to go to the Happy Restaurant. We can go straight from the library and turn left at the Happy Restaurant. We can see the cinema on our left. In the evening, we can have dinner at the restaurant. And then we can go home by bus.

口语测评

九、Danny 要去 Mike 的学校，但是他不知道路线，下面是 Mike 给 Danny 的描述。读一读，想一想 Danny 应该怎么去 Mike 的学校吧。

You can go straight, and then turn left at the park. Turn right at the library. Go straight and turn left at the bookstore. You can see my school.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 Ways to go to school

课时练 1 Part A Let's learn & Let's spell

☞(点按见 79 页)

一、读一读，在句中圈出与所给单词同类的一项。

1. early　　That's good for you.
2. sometimes　　I usually walk to work.
3. bus　　Do you have a car ?
4. get　　How do you go to school?
5. Mrs　　That woman is Miss Wang.

二、观察以下图片提供的线索，选择正确的一项。

(A) 1. These are good _____.



A. exercise　　B. walking

(A) 2. I _____ read a book.

A. usually　　B. sometimes

Mon.	Tue.	Wed.	Thur.	Fri.
				

(B) 3. This is _____ Green, our new English teacher.

A. Mr　　B. Mrs



(B) 4. I _____ to school by bike.

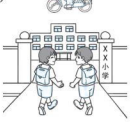
A. run　　B. come



三、读一读，根据图片提示，补全句子。(一空一词)

1. 

2. 

3. 

4. 


1. — How do you go to school?
—I sometimes go to school by bike.
2. — When will you go to the park?
—We will go by bus.
3. —Do you usually go to school on foot?
—Yes, I usually walk.
4. — Do you usually come by bus?
—Yes. Sometimes I come by car.

四、观察下面的图表，完成习题。

	cook	read	walk	watch TV
father	S	O	U	O
mother	O	O	S	O
me		U	O	O

U: usually　O: often　S: sometimes

(B) 1. My father sometimes _____.

A. reads a book
B. cooks for dinner
C. walks to work

(B) 2. My mother _____ cooks for us.

A. usually　B. often　C. sometimes

(A) 3. My mother and father often _____.

A. read a book　　B. cook
C. walk to work

(A) 4. I _____ read a book.

A. usually　B. often　C. sometimes

(C) 5. I often _____.

A. cook　　B. read a book
C. walk to school

6. My father, mother and I often watch TV. (一空一词)

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 2 Part A Let's learn – Let's chant

一、观察以下图片，读一读，猜出交通工具名称，写一写。

1. Look, this is a ____. It's fast.



2. The ____ on the water is very big.



3. The ____ looks like a train. It often goes under the ground.



4. The ____ is coming. We can take it to school.



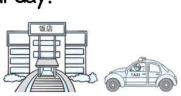
二、读一读，判断以下描述是否与图片相符，相符写 Yes，不相符写 No。



____ 1. We often go to school on foot.



____ 2. Let's go to the nature park on Saturday.



____ 3. They go to the restaurant by taxi.



____ 4. They get to Shanghai from Beijing by train.

三、根据汉语提供的情境， 补全对话。

1. 李明住在石家庄，他上午 8：00 出发，要在下午 1：00 之前到达北京，他应该怎么办？

—____ can I ____ ____ Beijing ____ ____ Shijiazhuang?

—You can go ____ ____.

2. 刘梅家住得离学校很近，朋友正在了解她上学的情况。

—Is your home ____ ____ our school?

—____, it's ____.

—____ do you ____ to school?

—I often come ____ ____.

3. Amy 的妈妈着急去开会，可会场附近并不通公共汽车，她该怎么办呢？

—Can you go there ____ ____?

—____, there is no ____. I can go there by ____.

四、阅读对话，完成任务。

Lily: Tom, where do you want to go this Sunday?

Tom: I want to go to the nature park with my friends.

Lily: Is it far?

Tom: Yes. We want to go there by bus.

Lily: When do you go?

Tom: At 9: 00 in the morning. Let's go together.

Lily: Great! See you at 9: 00.

1. Tom will go to the ____ ____ this ____.

2. —How do they get there?

—____ ____.

3. The nature park is (far near).

4. Lily (will will not) go to the nature park.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

单元检测卷（三）

主题语境 讨论出行采用的交通方式。

知识点

交通工具名称	表示出行方式的短语	重要句式
bus, plane, taxi, ship, subway, train	on foot, by bus/ plane/taxi...	How do you come to school? Usually, I come on foot/ by bus.

能力素养 能够使用频率副词描述自己上学采用的交通方式；能够根据路程、路况等情况选择恰当的出行方式。

听力部分

听力训练

一、Jenny 和她的朋友在谈论他们的生活习惯，请听一听，并在相应图片下方写出代号。

U = usually　　O = often
S = sometimes　　A = always



（ U ）


（ S ）


（ O ）


（ A ）


（ S ）


（ U ）

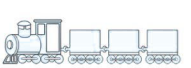
二、Jenny 和她的朋友上学的方式和大家一样吗？ 听一听，圈出正确的图片。

1.





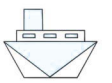
2.




3.





4.




三、听一听 Jenny 和朋友的对话，判断一下她们所谈论的内容是(T)否(F)与下面的内容相符。

（ T ）1. They are talking about their Sunday.
（ F ）2. Jenny will go to the nature park.
（ F ）3. Jenny will get there by bus.
（ T ）4. Amy will get there on foot.
（ T ）5. Jenny usually goes there on Sundays.

四、听一听 Jenny 的寒假旅行计划，先为她旅行的目的地排序，再把相应的交通方式的序号写到目的地旁的横线上。

A. 
B. 
C. 
D. 

（ 4 ）Ottawa ___D___　（ 3 ）New York ___C___
（ 1 ）Beijing ___B___　（ 2 ）Hong Kong ___A___

阅读部分

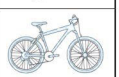
五、读一读，猜出 Jenny 的家人上学或上班采用的交通方式。

1. It has two wheels. I ride it to my school. It's a ___bike___.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2. It is big. It has four wheels. It runs down the streets every day. Many people take it to work. Sometimes I take it to my school. It's a ____.
3. It is big. It looks like a big bird. It can fly in the sky. It's a ____.
4. It looks like a train. It goes under the ground. My mother takes it to work. It's the ____.
5. It's a kind of car. We can take it but we must give the driver money. It's the ____.

六、观察 Jenny 的生活记录，根据调查报告展示的信息完成句子。

Monday			
Tuesday			
Wednesday			
Thursday			
Friday			

1. Jenny ____ reads ____. She likes reading very much.
2. Jenny often goes to school ____ ____.
3. ____ Jenny watches TV. She likes to watch animal shows.
4. Jenny ____ dances at home.
5. Sometimes Jenny ____ to school ____ / ____.

七、Jenny 周日有一份额外的宣传工作，读一读她的宣传词，完成小任务吧。

Welcome to the Green Botanical Garden. It is a big park. You can see lots of plants, trees and flowers here. It opens from 7: 00 a. m. to 7: 00 p. m. Monday to Sunday. You don't need tickets. It's free. You will have a lot of fun here with your family and friends. Here are some ways to get here.

By car: It's on Yulong Street. It needs 30 minutes to Shuanglong Bus Station. It needs about one hour from the train station.

By bus: From Shuanglong Bus Station, you can take the No. 13 bus. Get off at Botanical Garden. From the train station, you can take the No. 301 buses. The No. 45, No. 55 and No. 603 buses can also take you to the garden.

(B) 1. Botanical Garden means ____.
A. 动物园　B. 植物园
C. 游乐场

(A) 2. I can go to the garden ____.
A. at 8: 00 in the morning
B. at 8: 00 in the evening
C. at 6: 30 in the morning

3. We can see green leaves and beautiful flowers in the garden. Yes No

4. If we want to go to the garden, we must take a bus at the train station. Yes No

八、下面请你向 Jenny 介绍一下自己及家人的上学（班）方式及生活习惯吧。

提示：请使用 usually，often，sometimes 来介绍。题目自拟，不少于 6 句话。

My Family's Day

There are three people in my family. My father is a teacher. He often goes to work by car. Sometimes he goes by bus. My mother is a nurse. She works near home. She usually takes her bike to work. I'm a student. I often go to school by car. Sometimes I go to school by bus with my father. We are in the same school.

口语测评

九、请根据下面的表格来描述一下小明的家人上学或上班的交通方式吧。

			
Xiaoming	often		
Father		sometimes	often
Mother		always	

例：Xiaoming's mother always goes to work by bus.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练3 Part B Let's try & Let's talk

☞（点拨见80页）

一、读一读， 选择正确的词汇填空。（注意大小写）

must　helmet　traffic lights
attention　wear

1. We need to put traffic lights at this crossing. That's good for the cars, bikes and people.
2. Look at the helmet. I think you need it when you ride a bike on the way.
3. Attention please! The bus is coming!
4. We have no time. We must finish the work today.
5. You can't wear a hat here.

二、读一读，圈出更加符合语境的一项。

1. You can (take by) the No. 30 bus at this bus stop.
2. The light is (red green). Let's go.
3. You (must don't need to) wear a helmet in China.
4. Look at these people (by on) bikes. They look very happy.
5. Can I (get get to) there on time?

三、读一读，为下列标识选择正确的描述。

(A) 1. 

A. Don't stop here.
B. Stop, please.

(A) 2. 

A. Don't touch the door.
B. Open the door with your hand.

(B) 3. 

A. Please run and play here.
B. Pay attention to the children.

(B) 4. 

A. The traffic lights are red.
B. Pay attention to the traffic lights.

四、 阅读短文，判断句子正（T）误（F）。

Hello, I'm Peter. I'm a boy. I'm eleven years old. I always help my mum at home. I often make breakfast for her. I like to cook eggs for breakfast. Eggs are delicious. I often have eggs and milk for breakfast. Sometimes I eat noodles. My mum often has eggs, bread and juice for breakfast. Sometimes she eats noodles with me. My father always eats bread and jam for breakfast. And he often drinks some milk. Breakfast is very important for us. We have breakfast every day.

(F) 1. The title（题目）is" Help My Mum".
(T) 2. I always make breakfast for my mum.
(T) 3. I often have eggs and milk for breakfast.
(F) 4. My mother never eats noodles for breakfast.
(T) 5. We always have breakfast.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

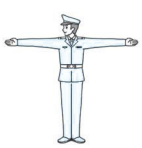
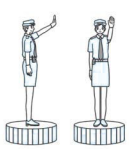
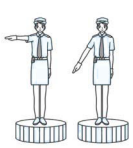
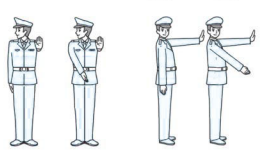
课时练 Part C Let's learn & play

☞(点拨见 80 页)

一、火眼金睛，圈出每句画线单词中不同类的单词。 【全书导学号 1423494】

1. He likes oranges and red. I like apples and yellow.
2. He drives a car and turns right at the crossing.
3. They get to the park first, and then go to the cinema together.
4. I can not play now. I must finish my homework first.

二、观察下面交通警察的手势，并根据其含义写出单词，补全句子。

1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 

1. The light is _____. Please _____.
2. The light is _____. Please _____.
3. The light is _____. Please _____ _____ and _____.
4. You can't go now. But you can _____ _____.

三、读一读，选一选。

(C) 1. Please don't run _____ the red light.
A. on B. for C. at

(A) 2. _____ please. He is coming.
A. Wait B. Waiting
C. Wait for

(A) 3. We _____ attention to the traffic lights.
A. must pay B. mustn't pay
C. must paying

(B) 4. Let _____ go!
A. is B. us C. we

四、阅读短文，完成任务。

Everyone needs to know the *rules* of the road. To cross the road, look left and right. Please walk on the zebra crossing. You can take your friends' hands when you cross the road. Don't play or run on the road. Always watch out for the cars and buses. Don't play beside the cars. When you see the red light, please stop and wait. You can ride a bike on the street after you are twelve years old. Go down the street on the right side of the road. Stand in a line to get on the bus. Don't play or speak loudly on the bus. Always wear your seat belt on a bus or in a car. Let's be safe on the way.

(A) 1. The word "rules" means _____.
【概括总结法】
A. 规则 B. 方法 C. 方向

(B) 2. 以下哪句可以概括短文的主要内容？
A. To cross the road, look left and right.
B. Everyone needs to know the rules of the road.
C. Always watch out for the cars and buses.

(B) 3. What can't we do?
A. Walk on the zebra crossing to cross the road.
B. Ride a bike when we are ten.
C. Wear our seat belt in a car.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 5 Part B Read and write & Let's explore

☞（点拨见80页）

一、 读一读，选一选。

(B) 1. Where _____ he from?
A. am B. is C. are

(C) 2. _____ meet you.
A. Nice B. Nice too C. Nice to

(A) 3. I _____ China.
A. am from B. is from
C. am of

(B) 4. How many _____ do you have?
A. friend B. friends C. a friend

(C) 5. What subjects do you have _____ your school?
A. on B. by C. in

二、根据图片提示的人物位置，选择正确的一项补全句子。

(A) 1. Hello, Lisa. How do you _____ to school?
A. come B. go



(B) 2. Hi, baby. When did you _____ to school today?
A. come B. go



(B) 3. Hello, Peter. Can you _____ to the park with me?
A. come B. go



(A) 4. _____go slowly.
A. You must B. Don't



三、读一读，选一选。

(A) 1. These children are _____Beijing, China.
A. in B. on C. at

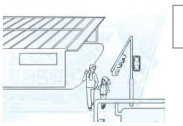
(B) 2. Sometimes it _____in winter.
A. snowy B. snows C. snowing

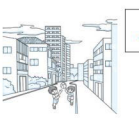
(C) 3. There is a river around our school, so they must go to school _____.
A. on foot B. by bus C. by ferry

(B) 4. It's too cold. The ferry _____. We can go by plane.
A. works B. doesn't work
C. no work

(C) 5. Don't _____run too fast.
A. let B. children
C. let the children

四、观察图片，你想为他们说些什么呢？ 请选择恰当的建议。

1.  C

2.  A

3.  D

4.  B

A. Don't play on the street! You must watch out for the cars and buses!

B. You must wear a life jacket.

C. Pay attention to the traffic lights, please. Don't go at the red light!

D. Don't eat too much. You must do sports. That's good for your body.

五、按要求完成句子。

1. He goes to the park by bike.（对画线部分提问）

How does he go to the park?

2. I can read the story for you.（以 let 开头改写句子）

Let me read the story for you.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. He runs and plays on the ferry. (以 don't 开头，给他提个建议)

Don't run or play on the ferry.

4. must you slowly drive sled the (.)
(连词成句)

You must drive the sled slowly.

5. She will stop and wait at the traffic lights.
(对画线部分提问)

What will she do?

六、读一读，将下列句子排成一段合理的对话。

A. Hi, wait please. Don't go at the red light!
B. Okay. How can we go to the park?
C. Sorry. I must pay attention to the traffic lights.
D. Let's go to the park to play with our friends.
E. We can take the No. 5 bus over there.
F. Come on! The bus is coming. Hurry up!

D B E F A C

七、读一读，选择正确的句子补全对话。

A: 1. B
B: Yes?
A: 2. D
B: Yes, it's near the hospital.
A: 3. A
B: Yes. But you can go there by bus.
A: 4. C
B: 5. E
A: Thanks a lot.

A. Is it far from here?
B. Excuse me. Can you help me?
C. Where is the bus stop?
D. Do you know where the Happy Cinema is?
E. Go straight and turn right. Pay attention to the traffic lights.

八、阅读短文，完成任务。

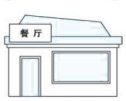
Micky and his friends are mice. They live in the village. One day, they come into the city. The city is so big. They want to go to a big restaurant to have lunch. But where is the restaurant? They look at a map. It's near. They find some bikes. They jump on the bikes. But they can't ride a bike. They get on the bus. People on the bus shout and kick them. They get off the bus in a hurry. Wow! Here is the restaurant! Wait! What's that? A big cat! Oh, no!

(C) 1. Micky and his friends are _____.

[关键信息提取]

A. 
B. 
C. 

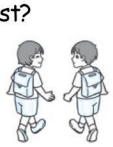
(A) 2. They want to go to a _____.

A. 

B. 

C. 

(C) 3. How do they want to go there at first?

A. 
B. 

C. 

4. A policeman helps them find the restaurant. Yes No

5. They get there by bus. Yes No

6. They have lunch at the restaurant. Yes No

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 5 Part C Story time

☞（点拨见 80 页）

一、根据本课故事内容完成任务。（教材第 21 页）

（一）仔细观察故事的图片并阅读故事，选择与故事内容相符的一项。

(B) 1. Where is Amy now?
A. She is in the UK.
B. She is in China.

(A) 2. Where does Annie come from?
A. She is from the UK.
B. She is from China.

(B) 3. How does Annie come here?
A. By double-decker. B. By plane.

(B) 4. How do they go home?
A. By taxi. B. By bus.

(A) 5. What does Annie think about China?
A. There are many differences between the UK and China.
B. China is so great!

（二）通过阅读故事，你发现了多少中国与英国的不同呢？在下列的表格中填一填。

The UK	China
use kinves and forks	1. use chopsticks
2. drive on the left side	drive on the right side
look right before crossing the road	3. look left first and then right before crossing the road

（三）根据故事及自己的生活常识，判断下列句子是否合理，合理的将其序号写入 True 栏，不合理的写入 False 栏。

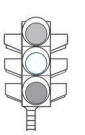
True	False
C D E	A B

A. In China, the drivers sit in the right side of the car.
B. In the UK, the drivers sit in the left side of the car.
C. In China, people drive on the right side of the road.
D. We can see double-deckers in the UK and China.
E. The door for people to get on is on the right side of the bus in China.

二、阅读短文，完成任务。

In 1858, people saw two lights on the streets for traffic in London. They were red and blue. Now the traffic lights are the same in every country. There are always three colours—red, yellow and green. Red is dangerous. It shows "Stop and wait". Green is safe. It means "Go". When you see the yellow light, that means a warning: Please slow down and wait. The traffic lights are policemen who can't talk. Everyone should follow their instructions.

(B) 1. The passage（短文）is talking about _____.

A. 
B. 
C. 

(A) 2. In 1858, we could see traffic lights on the streets in _____.
A. the UK B. the USA C. China

3. We should know the meaning of the traffic lights and follow them. Yes No

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

单元检测卷（二）

讨论不同交通方式所要遵守的交通规则。

表示行为方式的词汇	地点类名词	重要句式
slow down, stop, sled, ferry	Munich, Germany, Alaska, Papa Westray, Scotland	Don't go at the red light! I must pay attention to the traffic lights!

能够正确判断交通信号灯各种颜色所代表的信息并采取正确的行为；能够以表示肯定、否定的祈使句来给他人以警告、建议等。

听力训练

一、Jenny 的家人和朋友来自不同的国家或城市，请听一听她的介绍，将其家人和朋友抄写在相应地点下方。

uncle aunt grandfather cousin friend







grandfather _____ _____





_____ _____

二、Jenny 和朋友们周末时在街道上发现了很多标识，听一听她们的描述，为下列标识标明序号（1，2，3……）。


(3)


(2)



(4)


(5)


(1)

三、Jenny 和她的朋友遇到了很多情况。听一听，想一想，选出恰当的一项帮 Jenny 来回应。

(B) 1. A. Let's go.
B. Stop please. We should wait here.

(A) 2. A. Let's stand in a line and wait for getting on the bus.
B. Let's run to the bus. Hurry up!

(B) 3. A. You must take your umbrella!
B. You must wear a life jacket.

四、Jenny 她们正在跟朋友们介绍她们这一天的经历，请听一听，选出与其描述相符的一项。

(A) 1. When do they meet?
A. At 8: 00 in the morning.
B. At 2: 00 in the afternoon.
C. At 7: 00 in the morning.

(B) 2. Where do they go first?
A. To the park.
B. To the museum.
C. To the hospital.

(C) 3. How do they go to the museum?
A. By bus.
B. By bike.
C. On foot.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

五、Jenny 和同学们想利用韵句来宣传交通规则，请读一读，帮她们补全韵句吧。

Travel in the city

Let's g____, g____, g____.
Look at the l____.
It's red.
Please s____, s____, s____!
Now, it's green.
Let's g____, g____, g____.
Here it's y____.
Please be s____.
S____ and w____.
Now we can g____!

六、现在你来帮 Jenny 制定一下学校图书馆的规则吧。（图片可以帮助你）

1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 

1. Don't ____ or ____.
2. Don't ____ with your friends.
3. Don't ____ with your phone.
4. Don't ____ with your friends.

七、Jenny 向大家介绍了英国的交通规则，你来读一读，完成任务吧。

If you are in England, you must be very careful on the roads, because drivers drive on the left side of the road. They sit in the right side of the car. So before you cross a road, you must look right first and then left. The traffic lights are the same as those in China.

If you go by bus in England, you must be careful, too. Always remember the traffic goes on the left. The doors of the buses are on the left.

In many English cities, there are big buses with two floors. They are called double-deckers. You can sit on the second floor. From there you can see the city very well. That will be fun.

1. In England, we must be ____ about the traffic. Because it's ____ from that in China.
(B) 2. In England, they drive on the ____ side of the road, but in China, we drive on the ____.
A. right; left　　B. left; right
C. left; left
(B) 3. The traffic lights in England and China are ____.
A. different　　B. the same
C. red and yellow
4. In London, we can get off the bus on the same side as in China.　　Yes　No
5. People like to sit on the second floor of the big bus because they want to see the city well.　　Yes　No

八、你知道哪些中国的交通规则呢？给 Jenny 和她的朋友介绍一下吧。

In China, we drive on the right side. When we see the red light, we must stop. We can go at the green light. We can ride a bike on the street when we are twelve years old. Pay attention to the traffic lights and signs. We must follow them.

口语测评

九、请根据图片提示，用所给句型完成下列对话练习。

1. 
Shanghai
2. 
Qingdao
3. 
Guangzhou

句型：—How do you go to...?
—I go to...

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

My weekend plan

☞(点拨见81页)

一、手拉手，好朋友。（为画线单词找出同类的一项）。

(C) 1. We have an art lesson today.
A. go B. draw C. music

(B) 2. Can you swim?
A. ice-skating B. go
C. clothes

(A) 3. Sounds great!
A. look B. picnic C. clothes

(B) 4. Let's have a picnic.
A. going B. wash C. what

(C) 5. Tomorrow is Sunday.
A. Monday B. often C. today

二、读一读，用正确的 be 动词的形式填空。

1. Hello, I ___am___ a student.
2. What ___is___ Jenny doing?
3. Tom and Linda ___are___ fishing now.
4. The cows ___are___ eating grass.

三、读一读，选一选。

(C) 1. What are you _____ tomorrow?
A. going B. doing C. going to do

(B) 2. I have _____ art lesson.
A. a B. an C. /

(A) 3. He is _____ a snowman.
A. going to make B. make
C. makes

(B) 4. We have _____ our homework first.
A. going to do B. to do
C. do

(B) 5. I'm going to clean my room _____.
A. now B. tomorrow
C. yesterday

四、读一读，为下列图片勾选出正确的句子。

1. 

	A. He is fishing.
√	B. He is going to fish.

2. 

√	A. They are watching a film.
	B. They are watching TV.

3. 

	A. We're going to draw a picture in the park.
√	B. They're drawing a picture in the park.

五、阅读对话，完成任务。

Lily: Hello, this is Lily. Is that Rose?
Rose: Yes, this is Rose.
Lily: (1) ___C___, Rose?
Rose: I'm reading a book.
Lily: Sounds good. (2) ___B___
Rose: I'm going to clean my room.
Lily: I'm going to the park to draw some pictures. (3) ___A___
Rose: Sounds good. OK. I can go with you.
Lily: Great! See you at 2: 00.
Rose: See you then.

1. 请将以下句子放回对话中的横线上。（填序号）
A. Can you go with me?
B. What are you going to do this afternoon?
C. What are you doing

2. Rose is reading a book. Yes √ No

3. Lily is going to clean her room this afternoon. Yes No √

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 2 Part A Let's learn Let's make a plan

☞(点拨见 82 页)

一、读一读，想一想，根据提示写出单词，补全句子。

1. We have breakfast in the m_____. Then we go to school.
2. We buy fruit and food at a s_____.
3. We have dinner in the e_____.
4. Today is Monday. T_____ is Tuesday.
5. He will go to bed early t_____.

二、读一读，选一选。

(C) 1. He is _____his grandpa tomorrow.
A. going to look　　B. goes to visit
C. going to visit

(A) 2. Do you want to _____a trip to Beijing?
A. take　　B. taking
C. going to take

(B) 3. —_____ are they going to the park?
—At 9: 00 in the morning.
A. What　　B. When
C. Where

(B) 4. _____are they going to do tomorrow?
A. Who　　B. What
C. Where

三、读一读，判断以下句子是否与图片相符，相符画☺，不相符画☹。

1.



2.



3.

清　单			
手套	1副	墨镜	1副
袜子	1双	上衣	1件
食用油	一桶	帽子	1顶
食盐	1包	书	1本

4.



1. Today is July 9th. We are going to see a film tonight. ☹
2. I want to take a trip with my father and mother. ☺
3. Lucy is going to the supermarket today. ☺
4. I'm going to visit my friend this evening. ☹

四、根据图片提示补全句子。（一空一词）

1.



2.



1. —_____ are you going to do today?
—I _____ _____ to _____ _____ _____.
2. —What are you _____ to do _____ Sunday?
—We _____ going _____ _____ a _____.

五、观察 Lily 今天的计划表，完成任务。

Read a book	7: 45
Clean the rooms	8: 30
Watch TV	9: 30
Have lunch with grandparents	12: 00
Go to the park and play with friends	1: 00
Go to the supermarket	7: 00
See a film	9: 00

1. Lily is _____ to the _____ this _____.
2. She is _____ to _____ at 9: 00 tonight.
3. Lily is going to have lunch with grandparents today.　　Yes √　No

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

单元检测卷（一）

单元知识清单

学习目标 讨论自己计划做的事情。

知识点

活动类短语	表示时间的单词及短语	重要句式
visit my grandparents; see a film; take a trip; go to the supermarket	evening; tonight; tomorrow; next week	What are you going to do tomorrow? I'm going to have an art lesson. We're going to draw some pictures in Renmin Park.

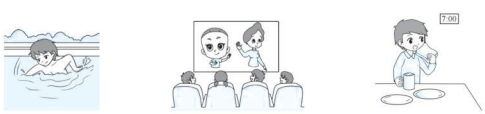
能力要求 能够使用一般将来时描述自己计划做的事情。

听力训练

一、听一听 Jenny 的周末计划，划掉不在她计划单上的图片。



二、听一听 Jenny 的朋友 Danny 的周末计划，按时间顺序排列下面的图片。



（ ）（ ）（ ）

三、Jenny 正在调查朋友们的周末计划，听一听，选择与所听内容相符的一项。

（ ）1. What is Steven going to do?

A. Go to the park.

B. Go swimming.

C. Go ice-skating.

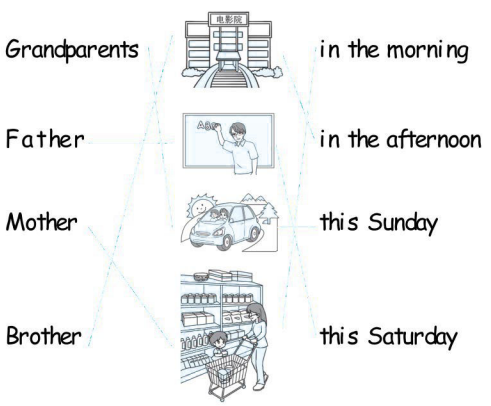
（ ）2. When is Tom going to buy a book?

A. On Sunday morning.

B. On Sunday evening.

C. On Sunday afternoon.

四、听一听 Jenny 的家人的周末计划，将人物、活动与时间连线。



笔试训练

五、认真读一读，想一想，为 Jenny 的小妹妹 Lynn 补全她的计划单。

1. At 6: 30 in the m_____, I am going to get up. Then I'm going to have breakfast.
2. I'm going to the s_____ with my mother after breakfast. We can buy a lot of things.
3. This week, I play with my friends. N_____ week, I'm going to v_____ my grandfather. I'm going to his house and have lunch with him.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

4. I'm going to see a f___ with my parents at the cinema at 21: 30 t___. Then I can have a good sleep.

六、读一读，想一想，请根据 Danny 的回答整理出 Jenny 的问题。

1. are to going w hat you do Sunday next

—What are you going to do next Sunday?

—I'm going to take a trip.

2. going with who you are

—Who are you going with?

—I'm going with my fri ends.

3. going where you are

—Where are you going?

— We are going to the new nature park.

4. how going there you are

—How are you going there?

—We're going by bus.

5. going when you are

—When are you going?

—We are going at 8: 00 in the morning.

七、以下是 Jenny 父母的假期计划，请仔细阅读，帮 Jenny 梳理一下需要重点关注的信息。 【全书导学号 1423494】

Dear Jenny,

Hi, Jenny. Here is your mum. I want to tell you something about my plan. You know, the winter holiday is coming. This holiday, I'm going to take a trip to Shanghai, China with your father. We have something to do there. We are going to stay there for about six days. We are going there by plane. Because we should work there. You have to stay home with your sister. I'm so sorry to say that. Aunt Susan is going to help you every morning. And you can call Uncle Mike for help, too. What are you going to do on these days?

Yours,
Mum

1. This is Jenny's mum's winter holiday plan.

2. Jenny's mum will go to Shanghai, China to work (play work).

(B) 3. Which is RIGHT?

A. Jenny is going to her aunt's house when her mother goes to China.

B. Jenny is going to stay home with her sister.

(B) 4. Which is NOT RIGHT?

A. Jenny's mother and father will fly to China this winter holiday.

B. Jenny should take care of（照顾）her brother when her parents are not at home.

八、在爸爸妈妈执行自己的假期计划时，Jenny 会做些什么呢？ 请帮助 Jenny 写出这段时间的计划，并回信给妈妈。（不少于 5 句话）

Dear Mum,

Hi, Mum. I know that you are going to China this winter holiday, and I'm going to stay home with my sister. I'm not very happy about it. But I'm going to take care of my sister and me. Aunt Susan is going to help us every morning. She can make breakfast and lunch for us. I'm going to clean our room and wash clothes with her. In the afternoon, I'm going to read books and watch TV with my sister. We will be OK. Wait for you!

Yours,
Jenny

口语测评

九、请根据以下图片，用所给句型和同伴谈论你的周日安排。

1.  2.  3. 

句型：—What are you giong to do this Sunday?

—I'm going to...

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 3 Part B Let's talk

☞(点拨见 82 页)

一、读一读，找出与句子中画线单词同类的词写在对应的方框里。

see　father　films　cinema

My cousin Jing is going to the park to play

[father]　[cinema]　[see]

games with her friends this Sunday.

[films]

二、读一读，选一选。

(C) 1. Do you want to visit _____ this Sunday?

A. he　B. she　C. her

(A) 2. We're _____ the park.

A. going to　B. go to　C. going

(C) 3. We have lots of _____.

A. apple　B. book　C. food

(B) 4. Why _____ go there by bike?

A. we　B. not　C. do

三、读一读，为下列句子选出正确的图片。

(D) 1. John is going to buy some comic books for his sister.

(C) 2. The things in the supermarket are half price today.

(A) 3. Here is a storybook. It's interesting.

(B) 4. We are going to the park by bike in the morning.

A. 

B. 
C. 
D. 

四、观察下列表格，完成任务。

name	Tom	Jane	Linda
where	park	supermarket	bookstore
what	play football	buy some fruit	buy some comic books
when	this Sunday	this evening	Saturday afternoon
how	by bike	on foot	by bus

(A) 1. _____ is going to the park.

A. Tom　B. Jane　C. Linda

(B) 2. —_____

—She is going to buy some fruit.

A. Where is Jane going?

B. What is Jane going to do?

C. When is Jane going there?

(B) 3. When is Linda going to the bookstore?

A. She is going to buy some comic books.

B. She is going there on Saturday afternoon.

C. She is going there by bus.

(C) 4. —_____

—She is going there by bus.

A. What is Linda going to do?

B. When is Linda going there?

C. How is Linda going to the bookstore?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

第四课时 Part B Let's learn & Let's play ☞（点拨见83页）

一、读一读，将所给字母按正确顺序排列，写出单词，补全句子。

1. There are many new words in this story. I need a (d c t n r y i i o a) dictionary.
2. My little brother's favourite book is this (c m c o i) comic book.
3. You need a good (w d r o) word book to help you.
4. I want to send a (p s t c d a r o) postcard to my mother.

二、读一读，选一选。

(A) 1. Where _____ they going?
A. are B. is C. do

(B) 2. I _____ going to the supermarket.
A. do B. is C. am

(C) 3. —_____ is he going to do?
—He is going _____.
A. What; on Wednesday
B. When; by bike
C. What; to buy some pens

(C) 4. —_____ are we going?
—On Tuesday morning.
A. What B. Where C. When

三、情景交际。

(C) 1. 当你进入一个店铺时，其服务人员会这样和你打招呼：
A. Hello, w h a t's your name?
B. What do you want to do?
C. Hello, can I help you?

(A) 2. 面对服务人员的招呼与询问，比较得体的回应应该是：
A. Yes, please. I want to buy...
B. Who are you, please?
C. No, I don't need you.

(A) 3. 想知道朋友的购物清单，你可以这样询问：
A. What are you going to buy?
B. What are you going to do?
C. When are you going there?

四、读一读，完成任务。

Jessica: I need a ruler. (1) D
Tom: OK.
Jessica: (2) B
Tom: I'm going to buy some pencils.
Clerk: (3) A
Jessica: Yes. Do you have any rulers?
Clerk: Yes. I'll show you. Here they are.
Jessica: (4) C
Clerk: It's one *yuan*.
Jessica: I'll take it. Thank you.
Tom: Can I see the pencils?
Clerk: Sure. Here they are.
Tom: I take five, please. How much are they?
Clerk: They are ten *yuan*.

1. 将下列句子的序号填入(1)-(4)题。

A. May I help you?
B. Let's go to the shop.
C. How much is it?
D. What are you going to buy?

(B) 2. How much is a pencil?
A. One *yuan*. B. Two *yuan*.
C. Ten *yuan*.

(C) 3. How much do Jessica and Tom pay (付款)?
A. Fifty-one *yuan*. B. Ten *yuan*.
C. Eleven *yuan*.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

第5课时 Part B Read and write & Let's explore

☞(点拨见83页)

一、猜字游戏。根据提示写出单词，补全句子。

1. We eat m[illegible] at Mid-Autumn Festival. Some of them are very sweet.
2. I like to read a p[illegible] for you.
3. On a holiday, the family often gets t[illegible].
4. It's a season. It's cool. We can see yellow and red leaves. It's a[illegible].
5. Do you like Spring F[illegible]? It's the Chinese New Year.

二、读一读，选一选。

(B) 1. What are you going to do _____ Children's Day?
A. to B. for C. with

(A) 2. We will _____ happy on that day.
A. be B. are C. is

(B) 3. Can you tell _____ something _____ this palace?
A. we; for B. us; about
C. us; for

(A) 4. He is _____ happy tonight.
A. so B. such C. lots of

(C) 5. What do your family do _____ these days?
A. at B. of C. on

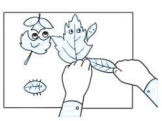
三、中国节日知多少。请读一读，将活动的序号填入相应节日的方框内。

Spring Festival	A C D
Mid-Autumn Festival	A B G
Dragon Boat Festival	D F (或写 F A)

A. We get together and have a big dinner.
B. We eat mooncakes.
C. We make and eat dumplings.
D. We eat *zongzi*.
E. We clean our rooms and buy new clothes.
F. We have dragon boat races.
G. We watch the moon.

四、读一读，根据对话描述勾选正确的图片。

1. —What are you going to do in the nature park?
—I'm going to look for some beautiful leaves.

A.  ☑ B.  ☐

2. —I'm going to see a film this weekend. What about you?
—I'm going to buy my favourite comic book.

A.  ☑ B.  ☐

3. —What is Lucy going to do tomorrow?
—She is going to send a postcard at the post office.

A.  ☐ B. 

☑

五、根据图片提示，补全句子。

1. 
2. 
3. 

4. 

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

1. —Where are you going?
   —I am going to the park.
2. —How are they going there?
   —They are going by bus.
3. —When are you going to Beijing?
   —I am going there on January 1st.
4. —What is she going to do tomorrow?
   —She is going to visit her grandparents.

六、读一读，根据图片提示补全对话。

Chen Jie: What are you going to do in the nature park?

Amy: I 1. am going to draw a picture. What about you?

Chen Jie: I 2. am going to look for some beautiful leaves.




Amy: What is Mike going to do this weekend?

Chen Jie: He 3. is going to see a film.




Amy:What is John 4. going to do this weekend?

Chen Jie:He is 5. going to buy some comic books.

七、读一读，完成任务。

Lantern Festival	Lantern Festival is on the fifteenth day of the first lunar month. People will eat *yuanxiao* and watch beautiful lanterns（灯笼）. And they will guess lantern riddles at night.
Qingming Festival	Qingming Festival is in April. People worship ancestors（祭拜祖先）and sweep the tombs（坟墓）.
Dragon Boat Festival	Dragon Boat Festival is on the fifth day of the fifth lunar month. People will eat *zongzi* and have dragon boat races.
Double Seven Festival	Double Seven Festival is on the seventh day of the seventh lunar month. People say Niulang and Zhinv will meet that night.

(A) 1. It is about _____.
A. Chinese holidays
B. holidays in the USA

(D) 2. 按时间顺序排列，哪个是正确的？
a. Lantern Festival
b. Qingming Festival.
c. Dragon Boat Festival
d. Double Seven Festival
A. b a c d　　B. a b c d

(A) 3. " Lunar month" means _____.
A. 农历　　B. 公历

(B) 4. _____ is about two people. They will meet at that festival.
A. Dragon Boat Festival
B. Double Seven Festival

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

第1课时 Part C Story time

基础练

一、根据故事内容完成任务。（教材第31页）

（一）根据故事内容为下列句子排序。

1. Zoom practices in the water.
2. Zoom is going to learn how to swim.
3. Zip teaches Zoom to swim.
4. Zoom learns to swim on TV.
5. Zoom can swim now.

2 ⟶ 4 ⟶ 3 ⟶ 1 ⟶ 5

（二）为下列图片选择正确的描述。



(B)



(D)



(C)



(A)

A. Look, you can swim now. That's wonderful!

B. Don't be afraid. Let's go to the swimming pool to learn to swim.

C. Hello, what are you going to do tomorrow?

D. Don't watch TV, please. You can't learn to swim without swimming in the water.

（三）根据故事内容回答问题。

1. What is Zoom going to do tomorrow?
   He is going to learn how to swim.
2. How does Zoom learn to swim at first?
   He learns to swim on TV.
3. Where does Zip take Zoom?
   Zip takes Zoom to the swimming pool.
4. How should Zoom learn to swim?
   Practice and he will learn.
5. What does Zoom learn from learning swimming?
   He knows that learning by doing.

提高练

二、阅读短文，完成任务。

What	A Good-Bye Party for Tom
Time	4: 30 p.m., Wednesday
Place	Classroom 101
Who	Students in Class 5, Grade 6 Teachers, Tom's family
Activities	1. A short film about Tom's life in China. 2. Teachers and friends show their wishes. 3. Sing songs and play games. 4. Tom says something to us.

(B) 1. This is a _____.

A. birthday party plan

B. good-bye party plan

(B) 2. What are they going to do at the party?

A. They are going to have a big dinner.

B. They are going to sing songs and play games.

(B) 3. Who are not going to the party?

A. Tom's family.

B. Students in Class 5, Grade 5.

4. The party will be on Wednesday. Yes √ No

5. The party will be in Class 5, Grade 6. Yes No √

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

单元测试卷（三）

单元达标卷

话题范围 讨论活动计划。

知识点

名词及短语

dictionary comic book word book postcard
Mid-Autumn Festival mooncake poem moon

重要句式

Where are you going? We're going to the cinema. When are you going?

能力提升 能够使用一般将来时描述自己想去的地方、想做的事情以及时间。

听力训练

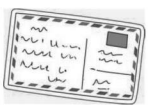
一、Jenny 的妹妹想在周末进行一次“大采购”，听一听，下面的物品在有没有她的 shopping list 上，有写 T，没有写 F。



(F)



(T)


(F)


(T)


(F)



(T)

二、听一听，寒假里 Jenny 准备去哪些地方、做些什么？ 按听到的顺序给下列图片排序。



(2)


(1)


(5)


(4)


(3)

三、下面是 Jenny 和她妹妹 Lynn 的对话，但只给出了一个人的谈话内容，请听一听猜一猜，选出正确的问句或答语吧。

(A) 1. A. What are you going to do tomorrow?
B. Where are you going tomorrow?
C. When are you going there?

(C) 2. A. What is our mum going to do?
B. Where is our mum going?
C. What is our dad going to do?

(B) 3. A. She's going to the bookstore.
B. He's going to buy some fruit.
C. He's going on Tuesday.

四、听短文，为 Jenny 一家人的周末计划配上恰当的图片。

(B) 1. What is her father going to do?

A.  B.  C. 

(A) 2. What is her mother going to do?

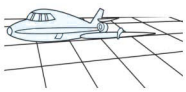
A.  B.  C. 

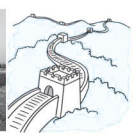
(C) 3. What are Jenny and Lynn going to do?

A.  B.  C. 

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

五、根据图片提示，补全 Lynn 的寒假计划。

How 

What   

When

January						
Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday	Sunday
			1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8	9	10	11
12	13	14	15	16	17	18
19	20	21	22	23	24	25
26	27	28	29	30	31	

1. I'm going to China this winter holiday. I will go there _____ _____. I am going to _____ Tian'anmen and the Great Wall.
2. I'm going to _____ gifts for my friends.
3. _____ am I going there?
   On _____ the fourth!

六、这是让 Jenny 动心的夏令营海报，仔细阅读，整理信息。



1. When is the summer camp going to start（开始）?
   It _____ _____ _____ start on _____ _____.
2. How many days will the camp take?
   It will take _____ days.
3. Jenny will play basketball at the summer camp. Yes No
4. Jenny will not draw pictures at the summer camp. Yes No

七、明年夏天，你们就结束小学的学习了。相信你一定会有很多想法和计划吧，请给 Jenny 写一封信，介绍一下自己的安排吧。

要求：1. 不能写出自己的真实姓名，以 Sam 代替；2. 注意时态，注意书信的格式；3. 正文不能少于 5 句话。

Dear Jenny,

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

Yours,

_____

口语测评

八、请根据下列表格提供的信息，与朋友一起谈论 Jenny 一家的暑假安排。

Name	Where	What
father	Qingdao	Swim in the sea
mother	Ottawa	Visit her parents
Jenny	Qingdao	Swim in the sea Play on the beach

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

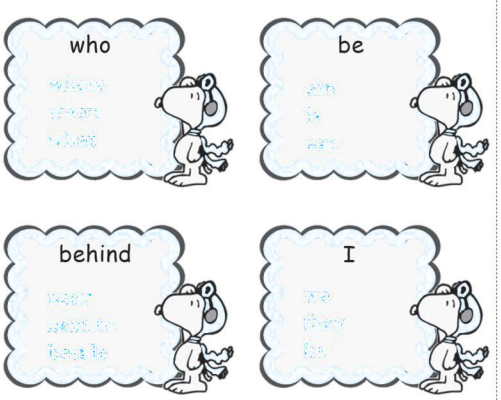
Recycle 1

阶段复习课 听说读写全攻略

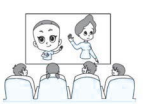
☞（点拨见 84 页）

一、读一读，分一分，将下列词汇写入正确的分组中。

where near we they when am
next to beside is what are he



二、读一读，根据图片提示，补全句子。

1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 

1. How can I get to the _____?
2. Let's go to the _____.
3. He is going to Beijing by _____.
4. I go to school by _____.
5. Are you going to _____ _____ _____?

三、读一读，选一选。

( ) 1. Can you help me, _____?
A. man B. sir C. boy

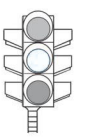
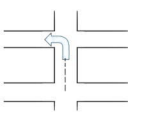
( ) 2. He must _____ a helmet to ride a bike.
A. has B. wear C. wears

( ) 3. It's not far. It's _____ here.
A. near B. from C. between

( ) 4. Don't _____ at the _____ light!
A. go; green B. stop; red
C. go; red

( ) 5. Danny and Li Ming _____ going to the park.
A. am B. is C. are

四、看一看，读一读，为下列描述匹配恰当的图片，将图片的序号写到句前括号内。

A. 
B. 
C. 
D. 
E. 

( ) 1. We're going to draw some pictures in the park. That will be fun.

( ) 2. She is going to the supermarket. She is ready for it.

( ) 3. Turn left at the crossing.

( ) 4. Turn right, please.

( ) 5. You must pay attention to the traffic lights!

五、读一读，选择正确的答语，并填写恰当的疑问词。

( ) 1. _____ is the Science Museum?
A. It's near the park.
B. We are going to sing a song.
C. You can go by bus.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

(C) 2. ____ are you going?
A. We usually go by bus.
B. Turn left.
C. We're going tomorrow evening.

(B) 3. ____ is he going to do tomorrow?
A. He goes to the museum shop.
B. He is going to play football.
C. He's going to the hospital.

(A) 4. ____ can we get there?
A. Turn left at the bookstore.
B. Pay attention to the lights.
C. I'm going to school by bus.

(C) 5. ____ do you come to school?
A. It's next to a farm.
B. We're going to the cinema.
C. I sometimes come on foot.

六、按要求完成下列句子。

1. The park is beside the post office. （对画线部分提问）
Where is the park?

2. I'm going to read a book this afternoon. （对画线部分提问）
What are you going to do this afternoon?

3. We're going to Wuhan. （对画线部分提问）
Where are you going?

4. Go at the yellow light. （变为否定句）
Don't go at the yellow light.

5. We go to school by ferry. （给出合理建议）
You must wear a life jacket.

七、读一读，选择恰当的句子补全对话。

Lucy: 1. B
John: I like summer best.
Lucy: 2. D
John: I'm going to take a trip to Harbin.
Lucy: 3. A
John: It's cool in summer.
Lucy: Sounds great! 4. E
John: I'm going by plane. It's fast.
Lucy: 5. C
John: On July 15.

A. Why are you going there?
B. Which is your favourite season?
C. When are you going?
D. What are you going to do this summer?
E. How are you going there?

八、阅读短文，判断句子正（T）误（F）。

Hi, I'm John. I'm from China. I'm 12. I study in Yucai School in Beijing. My home is near my school. I usually go to school on foot. Sometimes I go by bike. Tomorrow is Saturday. My parents won't work. We're going to have a picnic at Zhongshan Park. We're going to have a good time there.

(T) 1. John is a Chinese boy.
(T) 2. John lives near school.
(F) 3. John sometimes walks to school.
(T) 4. John is going to have a picnic with his parents this Saturday.
(F) 5. They are not happy to go to the park.

九、书面表达。

请向第八题里的 John 介绍一下你自己的情况吧。包括：年龄、就读的学校、上学的方式、周末的打算等。不少于 5 句话。

注意：不允许出现自己的真实姓名。

Hello! I'm a boy, too. I'm 12 years old. I study in Hongqing School in Shanghai. My home is not near my school. I usually go to school by bus. Sometimes my father drives me to school. Tomorrow is Sunday. I'm going to a bookstore. I'm going to buy some books there. I like reading.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

I have a pen pal

☞(点拨见84页)

一、读一读，用所给词的正确形式填空。

1. He _____ (live) in a small city.
2. Danny likes _____ (swim).
3. Let's read _____ (story).
4. Can you teach _____ (he) that song?
5. What are your _____ (hobby)?

二、读一读，选一选。

( ) 1. We like _____ kung fu.
A. play B. doing C. do

( ) 2. "Jasmine Flower"is a(n)_____.
A. Chinese song
B. English song
C. grass

( ) 3. I want to _____ music.
A. listen B. listen to
C. listening to

( ) 4. You like Chinese. I like Chinese, _____.
A. too B. also C. to

( ) 5. —What's your pen pal's hobby?
—_____
A. I like playing football.
B. He is going to play with us.
C. He likes singing songs.

三、读一读圈出与所给句子内容相符的图片。

1. Look, he is reading to the cow.

A.  B. 

2. They like climbing mountains.

A.  B. 

3. Linda and her friends like playing the *pipa*.

A.  B. 

4. The boys like playing sports after school.

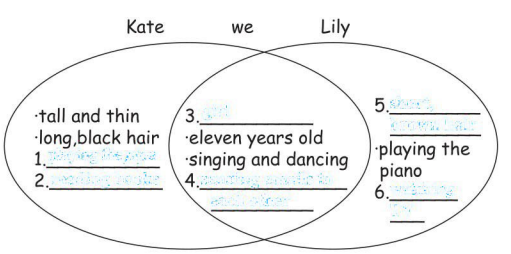
A.  B. 

5. She is writing a letter to her pen pal.

A.  B. 

四、阅读短文，完成图表。

Hello, I'm Kate. I'm eleven years old. I'm tall and thin. I have long, black hair. I have a pen pal. Her name is Lily. She is a girl, too. She is eleven, too. She has short, brown hair. I like playing the *pipa*, but she likes playing the piano. We like singing and dancing. I like reading books after dinner. She likes watching TV after dinner. We like sending emails to each other. We are good friends.



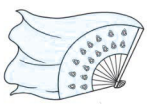
关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 2 Part A Let's learn–Let's do

(点拨见 84 页)

一、核心素养练

我们要善于通过观察图片推断出一些事情。下面的图片可以反映出人物的爱好。根据图片写出单词或短语，补全句子。

1.  2.  3. 

4.  5. 

1. Lily likes _____.
2. My grandmother likes _____.
3. Dongdong and his friends like _____.
4. Tom likes _____.
5. Her little sister likes _____.

二、读一读，选一选。

( ) 1. What _____ your hobbies?
A. is B. are C. am

( ) 2. I like _____. I _____ like English.
A. read; too
B. Chinese; also
C. sing; also

( ) 3. We like _____.
A. apple and red
B. playing and reading
C. drawing also reading

( ) 4. You like red. I like red, _____.
A. also B. two C. too

三、读一读，判断以下回应是(T)否(F)得体，并尝试改正。

1. Tom: Hi, Jack. Who's that boy?
Jack: He likes reading very much.
( ) _____

2. Lily: Do you like playing basketball?
Zhang Ning: Yes. That is my hobby.
( ) _____

3. Peter: What is your hobby?
Linda: She doesn't like listening to music. She likes drawing cartoons.
( ) _____

四、观察下列图表，根据所得信息完成任务。

	Father	Mother	Sister	Tony
		☺	☺	☺
	☺		☺	
	☺	☺		☺
	☺	☺	☺	☺
	☺	☺	☺	☺

1. Tony's father likes _____, listening to music, _____ and seeing a film.
2. Tony's mother doesn't like _____.
3. Tony's mother, Tony's sister and Tony like _____, _____ and _____.
4. Tony's family likes _____ and _____.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

第六单元 阶段测试卷（二）

本单元核心考点

讨论爱好。

动名词（短语）	重要句式
dancing, singing, reading stories, playing football, doing kung fu	What are Peter's hobbies? He likes reading stories.

能够询问并应答自己或他人的爱好。

听力训练

一、听一听 Jenny 的爱好和下列清单上的图片一致吗？一致写√，不一致写 ×。

1.  √

2.  ×

3.  ×

4.  ×

5.  √

二、听一听 Jenny 家人的爱好，圈出与所听内容相符的图片。

1. A.  B. 

2. A.  B. 

3. A.  B. 

4. A.  B. 

三、听一听，根据 Jenny 和家人的对话选择正确的一项。

(C) 1. Who are they talking about?
A. Jenny.
B. Jenny's mother.
C. Jenny's pen pal.

(C) 2. Where is Linda from?
A. China. B. Canada.
C. The UK.

(B) 3. What are Linda's hobbies?
A. Listening to music.
B. Singing songs and playing sports.
C. Taking trips.

四、Jenny 在和朋友玩“侦探”游戏，请帮助 Jenny 根据问句、图片、关键词提示，写出获得的线索。（写出答句）

1. 

2. 

3.  

4. 

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

1. —What is your hobby?
(like doing I)
— I like doing kung fu.
2. —What is your brother's hobby?
(he football)
— He likes playing football.
3. —What are Linda's hobbies?
(stories singing)
— She likes reading stories and singing.
4. —What are you going to do?
(teach my sister)
— I'm going to teach my sister to dance.

五、 下面是 Jenny 介绍她家人爱好的文章，但文章中出现了一些小问题，老师已经给她标记出来了，请帮她改一改吧。

Hello, I'm Jenny. I'm a girl. I have a happy family. My father is tall. He 1. like play football very much. My mother is a teacher. She likes 2. go shopping and she 3. likes also reading books. This is my sister. She is a student. She 4. like 5. dance and sing. I like reading 6. story and playing football. We like having fun together.

1. likes playing　　2. going
3. also likes　　4. likes
5. dancing and singing　　6. stories

六、 下面是 Jenny 的笔友的来信，请帮 Jenny 读一读，来获取重要的信息吧。

Dear Jenny,

Hello, Jenny. I'm a girl. I'm from China. My name is Linda. There are four people in my family, my father, my mother, my sister and I. My family likes having fun together. We like playing sports on Sundays. We like going to the cinema to see films. I also like reading books and listening to music. I want to learn English. Do you want to be my friend? Would you like to tell me something about your hobbies?

Write to me soon.

Yours,
Linda

1. The letter is from Linda.
(B) 2. Linda writes about _____.
A. her friends
B. her family and her hobbies
C. her school
3. Linda wants to know something about Jenny's hobbies. Yes No √

七、 请你根据下面的信息，帮 Jenny 写一封回信吧。

Name: Jenny Age: 12 years old
Family: father, mother, brother, sister
Hobbies: play basketball, play the guitar, read books, listen to music

要求：包括所有提供的信息，可适当根据自己的想象添加内容。注意书信格式，正文不少于 5 句话。

Dear Linda,

How are you? I'm Jenny. I'm twelve years old. There are five people in my family, my father, my mother, my brother, my sister and I. I like playing basketball and playing the guitar. I also like reading books and listening to music. I'm very happy to be your friend. Let's write emails to each other.

Write to me soon.

Yours,
Jenny

口语测评

八、 Lynn 调查了她两位朋友的爱好并制作了表格。请你和同学们谈论一下吧。

	reading	singing	dancing
Dongdong	√		√
Li Mei		√	

Tips: —What is sb's hobby? /What are sb's hobbies?
—He/She likes...

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 3 Part B Let's try & Let's talk

☞（点拨见 85 页）

一、核心素养练

世界知识知多少？观察下列图片和文字，它们的搭配是否合理，合理写 Yes，不合理写 No。

（ Yes ）1. China　Beijing



（ No ）2. Canada　Canberra



（ Yes ）3. the US　New York



（ No ）4. the UK　London



二、读一读，选一选。

（ C ）1. What _____ you doing?

A. do　B. does　C. are

（ A ）2. Here is _____ email for you.

A. an　B. a　C. two

（ C ）3. _____ Danny live in China now?

A. Is　B. Do　C. Does

（ B ）4. My brother _____ hiking.

A. like going

B. likes going

C. likes go

（ B ）5. I want to write a letter _____ my new pen pal.

A. of　B. to　C. on

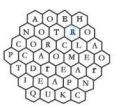
三、读一读，为下列句子匹配正确的图片。

（ B ）1. He is writing emails on his computer. He is very busy.

（ A ）2. They are playing word puzzles. They like that very much.

（ D ）3. We often go hiking in our holiday. We think that is fun.

（ C ）4. It lives in China. It is very cute.

A. 

B. 

C. 

D. 

四、下面是一个人的 QQ 空间个性签名档图片，你观察到了哪些信息？请根据观察到的信息完成任务。



1. 圈出与上面图片信息相符的图片。



2. (He　She) likes (playing basketball　playing football).

3. (He　She) (can　can't) do kung fu.

4. (He　She) (likes　doesn't like) singing.

5. (He　She) wants to _____ new _____.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 4 Part B Let's learn, listen, match and say

☞(点拨见 85 页)

一、读一读，根据提示填空。

1. He s_____ hard at school and at home . He is a good boy.



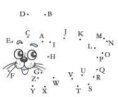
2. My mother c_____ for us in the kitchen.



3. Peter g_____ h_____ with his friends on Sundays.



4. Do you know the answer to the word p_____ ?



二、读一读，选一选。

(A) 1. _____ I also be his pen pal?

A. Can　B. Does　C. Am

(B) 2. _____ you live in China?

A. Are　B. Do　C. Does

(C) 3. My father _____ go to work by car.

A. isn't　B. don't　C. doesn't

(C) 4. He is _____. He likes _____ food.　【全书导学号 1423494】

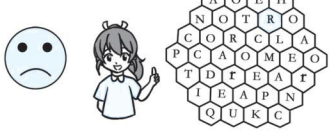
A. China; Chinese

B. China; China's

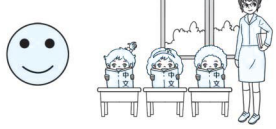
C. Chinese; Chinese

三、根据图片提示，补全句子，完成对话。

1.



2.



3.



1. — Does Linda do word puzzles every day?

— No, she doesn't.

2. — Does Tom study Chinese in Beijing?

— Yes, he does.

3. — Does your pen pal like playing ?

— No, she doesn't.

四、观察下列图表，根据所得信息完成任务。

Name	Country	Does	Likes
Peter	China	study English in Canada	go swimming
May	the UK	play sports with friends	draw pictures
John	the US	study Chinese in China	play football

1. Does Peter study English in Canada?

Yes, he does.

2. Where is May from?

She is from the UK.

3. What is John's hobby?

He likes playing football.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

单元练习 Part B Read and write (Let's try ~ Let's write)

☞（点拨见86页）

一、读一读，为单词或短语圈出正确的图片。

1. goal A.  B. 

2. science club A.  B. 

3. share A.  B. 

4. join in a game A.  B. 

二、读一读，选择正确的一项。

(A) 1. _____ we go to the zoo this afternoon?
A. Shall B. Are C. Does

(C) 2. _____ your mother like shopping?
A. Is B. Do C. Does

(B) 3. My sister _____ long hair.
A. have B. has C. is

(B) 4. There is an art class _____ 2 p. m. _____ Saturday.
A. on; at B. at; on C. in; on

(C) 5. Miss Wang _____ us _____ English.
A. teach; to learn
B. teaches; learn
C. teaches; to learn

三、用所给词的适当形式填空。

1. My friend sometimes _watches_ (watch) TV after dinner.

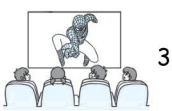
2. My grandparents often _make_ (make) and _fly_ (fly) kites.

3. Mike usually _goes_ (go) home at 5: 00 in the afternoon.

4. My new pen pal _lives_ (live) in Shanghai.

5. Does Lily _go_ (go) shopping today?

四、读一读，判断以下句子是(T)否(F)与图片内容相符。

1.  2.  3. 

4.  5. 

(F) 1. Tom's hobby is making robots.

(F) 2. My sister Sarah likes watching TV.

(F) 3. My father teaches me to swim.

(T) 4. My friend makes salad for the party.

(F) 5. My teacher cooks noodles in the dining hall.

五、读一读，根据所提供的语境选择正确的一项。

(A) 1. 你想让大家一起来开始阅读，应该说：
A. Let's read together!
B. Do you like reading?
C. Can we read together?

(C) 2. 你希望大家都来关注、参加机器人俱乐部，你会用什么样的海报标题呢？
A. This is a robot club.
B. Do you want a robot club?
C. Robot Club, Your Club!

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

(B) 3. Lily 的小弟弟总是自己玩玩具，不让别人玩，也不和别人一起玩，用下面哪句话向他提意见更合适呢？

A. Do you want to join us?

B. Join us. We can share. You will be very happy.

C. Don't play yourself. Play with us.

(A) 4. 你跟朋友约好明天在电影院见，今天告别时更恰当的方式是什么呢？

A. See you at the cinema.

B. Good-bye!

C. Do you want to see a film?

六、读一读，选择正确的句子补全对话。

A: Hi, Jack. Look at my family photo.

B: 1. C

A: He is my father.

B: 2. D

A: He is a doctor.

B: 3. E

A: Yes. Look, this is my mother.

B: 4. B

A: She works at a supermarket.

B: 5. A

A: She likes reading books and listening to music.

B: Me, too.

A. What are her hobbies?
B. What does your father do?
C. Who's that man?
D. Where does she work?
E. Does he like playing sports?

七、阅读短文，完成任务。

I make a new friend. His name is Jack. He is from Alaska. He likes cooking. He joins a cooking club. He learns to cook Chinese food every afternoon. He also likes drawing pictures. He often goes to the park to draw pictures. We like going hiking very much. We often go hiking together on the weekend. We feel tired but happy.

(B) 1. The title（标题）should be _____.

A. My pen pal

B. My new friend

C. My hobbies

(C) 2. Jack is from _____.

A. China B. the UK

C. the US

(A) 3. Jack likes _____.

A. drawing pictures

B. dancing

C. singing songs

4. 下边的图片中哪些是 Jack 不喜欢做的，请划掉它们。



5. Jack often draws pictures in the park.

Yes No

6. When we go hiking, we are tired, but we are very happy.

Yes No

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Part C Story time

☞（点拨见 86 页）

一、根据 Part C 的故事内容，完成任务。

（教材第 45 页）

（一）选出与故事内容相符的一项。

(C) 1. The story is about _____.

A. Zip and her tail

B. Zac's hobbies

C. why squirrels' tails are bushy

(A) 2. We can see _____ in the story.

A. Zac, the Monkey King, some other squirrels and Zip

B. Zoom, Zac and Zip

C. Zac, Zoom and squirrels

(B) 3. The story happened in _____.

A. Zip's house B. a forest

C. a zoo

(C) 4. Zac could be（可能是）_____.

A. Zip's friend

B. Zoom's friend

C. Zip's grandfather

(A) 5. Zac got up and looked at his tail. It was really bushy! "Bushy" means " _____ ".

A. 毛茸茸的 B. 长的

C. 毛发稀少的

（二）再读故事，判断以下句子是（T）否（F）与故事内容相符。

(T) 1. Zac likes singing and dancing.

(F) 2. The squirrels give the Monkey King gifts because they like the Monkey King.

(F) 3. Zac fell down and had a bushy tail. He was sad.

二、阅读故事，完成任务。

One morning, a rabbit sees a tortoise walking slowly on the road. The rabbit laughs. " You are so slow!" " No," says the tortoise. " I'm not slow. I just don't like to hurry."

" Let's have a race! I'm sure to win," says the rabbit.

They have a race to a lake. The rabbit runs and runs. Soon he feels tired and stops. He thinks, " The tortoise is so slow. He can't catch up with me." So the rabbit goes to sleep under a big tree. The tortoise walks and walks. He sees the rabbit sleeping under the tree. He is tired, too. But he doesn't stop. He keeps walking.

When the rabbit wakes up and runs to the lake. The tortoise is already there. The rabbit is sad and learns a lesson: Slowness but steadiness wins the race.

（一）通读故事，把握主题。

1. The story is about a _____ and a _____.

2. The story tells us _____.

（二）再读故事，把握生词，请选出对句中画线部分理解正确的一项。

(B) 1. I'm sure to win.

A. 跑步 B. 赢得胜利 C. 输

(C) 2. The rabbit learns a lesson.

A. 课程 B. 技术 C. 教训

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

☞(点拨见 86 页)

话题 讨论爱好。

词组短语	重要句式
cooks Chinese food, studies Chinese, does word puzzles, goes hiking	Does he live in Sydney? No, he doesn't. Does he like doing word puzzles and going hiking? Yes, he does.

目标 能够使用第三人称单数谈论他人喜欢或经常做的事情。

听力训练

一、听一听 Jenny 和她朋友的相关信息，与以下图片相符吗？ 相符写 T，不相符写 F。

1. 
(F)

2. 
(T)

3. 
(F)

4. 
(F)

5. 
(T)

二、听一听 Jenny 的问题，选出正确的回答吧。

(B) 1. A. She likes reading and writing.
B. He likes playing football.
C. He is my brother.

(A) 2. A. Yes, he does. B. Yes, he is.
C. No, she doesn't.

(C) 3. A. I'm going to have an art lesson.
B. She is going to the park.
C. He is going to the cinema.

三、Jenny 在介绍她的新朋友，根据她的介绍选出正确的一项吧。

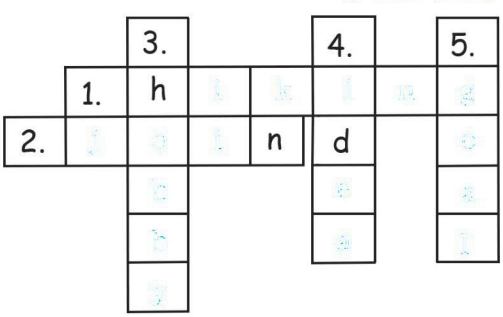
(B) 1. A. Jenny's pen pal is a girl.
B. Jenny's pen pal is a boy.
C. This is Jenny's classmate.

(A) 2. A. He is eleven years old.
B. He is twelve years old.
C. She is twelve years old.

(C) 3. A. He is from China.
B. She is from Australia.
C. He is from the US.

(A) 4. A. He studies Chinese.
B. He goes swimming on Sundays.
C. He cooks vegetables.

四、Jenny 和小妹妹正在玩填字游戏。 请根据句子的提示，帮她们完成填字吧。



1. My family likes going _____ on holidays.
2. Do you want to _____ us?
3. What is your _____?
4. He has a very good _____.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

5. They get the last _____ and win the football game.

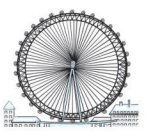
五、你能根据以下图片，猜出 Jenny 新笔友的信息吗？（根据图片提示，回答问题，写出句子，介绍 Jenny 的新笔友）

1. Who's this girl?



She is Jenny's new pen pal.

2. Where does she live?



She lives in London.

3. How many people are there in her family?



There are five people in her family.

4. Does she like animals?



Yes, she does.

5. What are her hobbies?（写两项即可）



She likes dancing and singing.

六、Jenny 的新笔友向 Jenny 介绍了自己的好朋友。我们一起来读一读，获取信息吧。

Dear Jenny,

How are you? London is cold today. How is the weather in Ottawa? I'd like to tell you something about my best friend today. Her name is Susan. We live on the same street. We study in the same class. We go to school on our bikes together every school day morning. We often play ping-pong after class. After school, sometimes we do homework together. Sometimes we go to the library to read a book. On the weekend, we often go to the nature park to study something about the plants. We like trees, flowers there. And we like reading books under the big trees. That's interesting. Do you have any good friends? Can you tell something about them to me? Write me soon, please.

Yours,
Linda

1. Jenny's pen pal is Linda（写出名字）.
2. Jenny lives in Ottawa. Susan lives in London.
3. Linda and her friend go to school by bike.
4. Susan likes reading books. Yes No

(C) 5. In the nature park, we can see _____.
A. books B. rivers
C. trees and flowers

(B) 6. On the weekend, we often go to the nature park to study something about the plants. "Plants" means " _____ ".
A. 动物 B. 植物 C. 地点

七、请把你的好朋友介绍给 Jenny。

Dear Jenny,

How are you? I'd like to tell you something about my best friend today. His name is Tom. He is ten years old. He lives in Australia. He likes playing sports and singing. We often make sandwiches for each other. I think you can be good friends, too.

Yours,
Jenny

口语测评

八、猜猜他是谁？请用提问的方式来猜出你朋友所选中的是班上的哪一位同学。



Tom, England

提示：Is he a boy?
Where is he from?
Does he have short hair?...

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 5 What does he do?

☞(点拨见86页)

一、核心素养练

英语中有一类单词，加后缀就会变成相应的职业类名词。如 teach 后加-er 就变成了 teacher，意为“老师”。这些单词还有很多。

根据图片和单词提示，写出正确的职业类单词。

teach – teacher　drive – driver



1. clean _____



2. sing _____



3. dance _____



4. play _____



5. write _____

二、读一读，猜一猜，用第一题中出现的职业类单词填空，补全句子。

1. Linda wants to be a _____. She likes singing very much.
2. John's father is a taxi _____. His taxi is white.
3. Tom plays basketball very well. He is a good _____.
4. Do you know the _____ of this book?
5. My grandfather is a _____. He keeps the supermarket clean every day.

三、读一读，选一选。

(B)1. _____ Li Lin here today?
A. Does　B. Is　C. Are

(A)2. What _____ that man do?
A. does　B. is　C. are

(C)3. My pen pal _____ to _____ a businessman.
A. want; be　B. wants; is
C. wants; be

四、读一读，匹配下列句子与图片。

1. Today is Parents' Day. Many parents come to our school.
2. That woman is our head teacher. She is nice.
3. Linda wants to be a doctor. She likes helping others.
4. —What does Peter's uncle do? —He is a farmer. He has a big farm.



(3)



(2)



(4)



(1)

五、观察下列表格，完成任务。

	doctor	teacher	student	driver
Father	√			
Mother		√		
Sister				√
Brother			√	
Tony			√	

1. Tony's mother is a _____.
2. _____ and _____ are students.
3. There are four people in the family.
Yes　No √
4. Tony's father works at a hospital.
Yes　No √

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

单元练 2 Part A Let's learn Let's spell

一、核心素养练

英语中男警察叫 policeman 而女警察是 policewoman。查一查，想一想，写出下列单词的对应词。



waiter _____ actor _____



postwoman _____ businesswoman _____



king _____ prince _____

二、读一读，判断以下内容是否与图片相符，相符写 T，不相符写 F。

(F) 1. My mother is a businesswoman.



(T) 2. His uncle is a factory worker.



(T) 3. Mary's sister is a police officer.



三、按要求完成句子。

1. Her aunt is a police officer.（改为一般疑问句）

Is her aunt a police officer?

2. What does he do?（改为同义句）

What is his job?

3. Is that girl a singer?（给出否定回答）

No, she isn't.

4. She is a postwoman.（对画线部分提问）

What is she?

四、阅读下列韵句， 完成任务。

What do I do? What do I do?
I study at school. I study at school.
What do I do? What do I do?
I make great food. I make great food.
What do I do? What do I do?
I take you home. I take you home.
What do I do? What do I do?
I grow food. I grow food.

读一读，想一想，圈出在韵句中出现的职业，并按韵句中出现的顺序为其排序，将序号写在方框内。



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

☞(点拨见 119 页)

学习目标 讨论职业。

知识点	职业类名词（短语）	重要句式
	factory worker, postman, businessman, police officer	What does he do? He's a businessman.

能力要求 能够询问、回答他人职业，能够以一般疑问句来确认某人的职业。

听力训练

一、Jenny 在和朋友玩职业卡片游戏。判断下面出示的职业卡片是(T)否(F)与所听内容相符。

1. 
(F)

2. 
(T)

3. 
(T)

4. 
(T)

5. 
(F)

二、听一听，发现 Bob 和他的朋友们的职业，将姓名与职业图片连线。

Bob　　Peter　　Julia



三、听一听，根据 Jenny 和妈妈的对话，选择正确的答案。

(B) 1. Who will come to Jenny's house?
A. Jenny's friend.
B. A friend of Jenny's mother.
C. A friend of Jenny's father.

(A) 2. Is this friend a police officer?
A. Yes, he is.
B. No, he isn't.
C. No, she isn't.

(C) 3. What does Jenny want to be?
A. She wants to be a dancer.
B. She wants to be a singer.
C. She wants to be a writer.

四、他们的职业是什么？帮 Jenny 猜一猜，写一写吧。　【全书导学号 1423494】

1. He is a f_____ w_____.
He works very hard.
2. His mother is a b_____.
She is very busy.
3. Is that man a p_____?
4. He wants to be a p_____ o_____.

五、根据图片及句子的提示，猜出 Jenny 和她的妹妹对话的内容，写出问句或答句。

1. —Lynn, _____?
—Bob is a basketball player.



2. —Jenny, _____?
—Yes, she is.



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. —Lynn, what does our aunt do?



—She is a teacher.

4. —Jenny, is your pen pal a student?



—Yes, he is.

六、下面是 Jenny 今天阅读的一篇短文，你能帮她完成题目吗？

Today I am going to the firehouse with my classmates. Our teacher takes us there. We see a fireman Joe and his dog Jack there. They are wearing their helmets and the fireman's clothes. We wear helmets, too. We see the big fire truck. It is red. It has hoses and a ladder. The hoses are very long. The water can go through them. The ladder is tall. Joe climbs up the ladder and stands in the sky. The hoses and ladder help the firemen put out a fire.

Joe tells us about fires. He says when the smoke goes up, we must go down to the floor. I think Joe is a hero. I want to be a fireman like him one day.

(A) 1. The passage is about _____.

A. 

B. 

C. 

(B) 2. I am a _____.

A. 

B. 

C. 

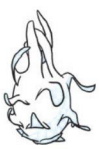
(B) 3. It has hoses and a ladder. Hoses are _____.

A. 

B. 

C. 

(B) 4. The hoses and ladder help the firemen put out a fire. What is a fire?

A. 

B. 

C. 

七、请向 Jenny 介绍一下自己家人的职业，不少于 5 句话。

This is my family. My father is a pilot. He goes to work by car. My mother is a nurse. She works at a hospital. You a student. Too fun. Let's be good friends.



口语测评

八、 职业体验家

今天的活动课上，老师带同学们体验了各种不同的职业，根据图片及所给句型提示，练一练，说一说吧。

—Is he/she a (n)...?

—Yes, he/she is. /No, he/she isn't.

—What does he/she do?

—He/She is a (n)...

1. 

2. 

3. 

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 5 Part B Let's talk

一、读一读，将下列单词送入正确的组别中去。

tall　car　boat　short　fisherman　big
bike　student　postman　taxi　thin　bus



二、读一读，为下列语句选择正确的图片。

(B) 1. Mary's uncle is thin.

A. 　B. 

(A) 2. My mother often takes me to school.

A. 　B. 

(A) 3. My uncle is a fisherman.

A. 　B. 

(B) 4. Bob goes to work by bike every day.

A. 　B. 

三、读一读，选一选。

(B) 1. —What does your father look like?
—_____

A. He likes playing sports.
B. He is tall and thin.
C. He is a doctor.

(C) 2. Lily _____ a very healthy life.
A. is　B. does　C. has

(A) 3. He _____ sea.
A. works at　B. work at the
C. works in

(B) 4. He should _____ healthy.
A. stays　B. stay　C. staying

四、读一读，完成任务。

Jim:(1) D
Amy: She's my aunt.
Jim: She's beautiful. (2) B
Amy: She is a hostess.
Jim: Cool. Where does she work?
Amy: (3) E
Jim: How does she go to work?
Amy: (4) C
Jim: What are her hobbies?
Amy: (5) A

1. 将下列句子的序号填入对话正确的题号处。

A. She likes reading stories and dancing.
B. What does she do?
C. She goes to work by car.
D. Who's that woman in the picture?
E. She works at a TV station.

(A) 2. They are talking about _____.
A. Amy's aunt
B. Jim's aunt
C. Amy's friend

(C) 3. She is a _____.

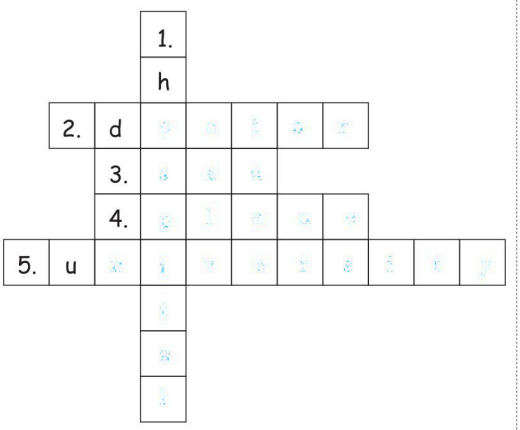
A. 　B. 

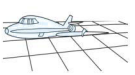
C. 

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

单元测试卷 Part B Let's learn-Write and draw

一、读一读，根据图片提示完成字谜。



1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 

二、读一读，猜一猜，写一写。

1. My brother works at sea. He can get lots of fish. He is a f_____.
2. His brother can drive a plane. He is a p_____.
3. Miss Zhang is a great s_____. She works at a big university.
4. The c_____ asks Tom to play on his football team（足球队）.

三、读一读，根据答句选择合适的疑问词补全问句。（可重复使用）

How　What　Where

1. —_____ does your sister look like?
—She is tall and thin. She has long hair.
2. —_____ does your grandfather work?
—He works at a big shop.
3. —_____ does your aunt go to work?
—She goes to work by bike.
4. —_____ does your mother do?
—She is a teacher.

四、读一读，判断职业，为其选择恰当的工作场所。

(B) 1. He takes the food and drinks to the people. He cleans the tables.
(D) 2. She helps the doctor take care of the people who are sick.
(A) 3. He has lessons. He teaches children English.
(C) 4. He grows food. He plants vegetables.



A　B　C　D

五、阅读短文，选择正确的答案。

Li Yun is an accountant. She works in a company. She helps the company use its money well. She is good at math. She likes working with numbers. She goes to work by subway. She works hard.

(B) 1. "Accountant" means "_____".
A. 歌手　B. 会计　C. 飞行员
(C) 2. "Company" means "_____".
A. 餐馆　B. 医院　C. 公司
(B) 3. What is Li Yun's hobby?
A. She likes using the money well.
B. She likes working with numbers.
C. She likes helping others.
(A) 4. How does she go to work?
A. By subway.　B. By car.
C. By bus.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 5 Part B Read and write & Let's spell

☞(点拨见 119 页)

一、读一读，猜一猜，选一选，将所给字母按正确顺序排列，组成单词，补全句子。

1. He works on TV. He tells people what happens. He is a C reporter.
2. She helps the boss. She can use the computer well. She works in an office. She is a A secretary.
3. He likes studying science. His job is about science. He is a B scientist.
4. He is a kind of teacher. He teaches and trains the players. He is a E coach.
5. He works on a plane. He can drive it. He is a D pilot.

A. s c r t r y e e a　　B. p l t i o

C. r p r t r e o e　　D. s c n t s t i e i

E. c c h o a

二、读一读，圈出正确的一项。

1. He can (is be) a PE teacher.
2. She can type (good quickly).
3. Robin (wants want) to (be is) a scientist.
4. I like (useing using) computers.
5. Wang Yizhou (study studies) very hard at school.

三、读一读，选一选。

(C) 1. I'm good at _____.

A. swim　　B. to swim

C. swimming

(A) 2. If you like sports, you _____ be a good player.

A. can　　B. mustn't　　C. can't

(C) 3. Where _____ she going to work?

A. does　　B. do　　C. is

(B) 4. What _____ his phone number?

A. does　　B. is　　C. are

(B) 5. Linda wants to be a businesswoman _____ her mother.

A. likes　　B. like　　C. look

四、为下列图片选择恰当的描述。

1. 
(B)

2. 
(A)

3. 
(D)

4. 
(C)

5. 
(E)

A. He likes playing with toy cars. He wants to be a driver.

B. Jack likes having science lessons. He works hard. He wants to be a scientist.

C. Tom often plays on the computer. He is good at playing computer games. He wants to be a computer game player.

D. Peter likes playing sports. He wants to be a good sports player.

E. Li Mei likes helping her mother cook food. She wants to be a good cook.

五、依照例子完成句子。

例：Lily has a new schoolbag.
What does Lily have?

1. Daisy likes singing and dancing.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

What does Daisy like?

2. John goes to Shanghai by train.

How does John go to Shanghai?

3. Li Feng wants to be a player.

What does Li Feng want to be?

4. Jenny's aut works at a school.

Where does Jenny's aunt work?

5. Liu Lei is going to be a reporter.

What is Liu Lei going to be?

六、观察图片，回答问题。





1. What does this man do?

He is a pilot.

2. Where does he work?

He works in a rescue plane.

3. What can he do?

He can drive a plane.

4. How does he go to work?

He goes to work by car.

七、阅读短文，完成任务。

（1）I'm a doctor. I treat sick people. I work at the hospital.

（2）I'm a nurse. I help the doctor. I take care of the sick people.

（3）I'm a cleaner. I make the dirty streets clean. I keep the city clean.

（4）I'm a driver. I work in my car. I take people home.

（5）I'm a farmer. I grow vegetables.

（6）I'm a teacher. I teach students English.

（7）I'm a cook. I make delicious food.

（8）I'm a pilot. I drive the big plane. I can fly in the sky.

(B) 1. The title should be _____.

A. What do I look like?

B. Different jobs

C. What do you like?

2. 根据短文的介绍，为下列图片排序。


(G)


(F)


(H)



(C)


(D)



(A)


(E)


(B)

(B) 3. I treat sick people. What does " treat" mean?

A. 欺骗　　B. 治疗　　C. 帮助

(A) 4. 仔细观察第 2 题中的图片，再读短文，思考短文的主题：

A. There are many different jobs. Each job can help different people.

B. Different people have different jobs. Some of the jobs are good. Some of the jobs are bad.

C. There are so many jobs in the world. I don't know what I want to be.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

第四课时 Part C Story time

一、快速读故事，把握主要内容及线索。

（教材第 55 页）

1. Zoom and Zip are talking about unusual jobs.
2. 圈出故事中提到的职业，并为其排序。


(2)


( )


(4)


( )


(1)


(3)

二、再读故事，把握细节。Zoom 提出了好几种职业，认真读故事，找出 Zip 不想从事这些职业的理由。

1. Bee farmer I will get stung.
2. Computer game tester: I like to study. I don't like computer games.
3. Magician's assistant: I don't like that.
4. Lion tamer: It's too dangerous.

三、阅读短文，选择正确答案。

My mum is nice. She is a fantastic cook, and a brilliant juggler. She can play with many balls. She is a great painter. She is the strongest woman in the world!

My mum is really nice! She is a magic gardener. She can make anything grow. And she is a good fairy. When I'm sad, she can make me happy. She can sing like an angel. Sometimes she roars like a lion.

My mum is really, really nice. She is beautiful. She could be a dancer. Sometimes she can be an astronaut and take me to space. She can be a film star. And she could be a boss. She is my mum. She's a superwoman!

My mum is really, really, really nice. She makes me laugh. I love her very much. And you know what? She loves me! She always will!

(A) 1. This passage talks about _____.

A. my mum　　B. jobs

C. my life

(B) 2. I think my mum is a superwoman because _____.

A. she is a dancer and an astronaut

B. she can do many things for me

C. she is really happy

(A) 3. Why can my mum do so many things?

A. Because she loves her child. She wants to make her child happy.

B. Because she is very clever.

C. Because she likes doing so many things.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

话题表达解读

话题 讨论职业。

词句 职业类名词：fisherman, scientist, pilot, coach, reporter, secretary
场所类名词：university, gym
重要句式：Where does he work? He works at sea.
How does he go to work?
He goes to work by bike.

能力目标 能够使用单数第三人称谈论他人的职业、工作场所及工作方式；能够根据自己的爱好讨论可以做的，或想做的职业。

听力训练

一、Jenny 正跟朋友玩职业大比拼游戏，认真听一听，根据听到的顺序为下面的图片排序。


（ 3 ）


（ 1 ）

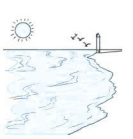

（ 5 ）


（ 2 ）


（ 4 ）

二、听一听，猜一猜。 猜出 Jenny 给你出的字谜，选出对应的图片。

（ B ）1. A.  B. 

（ D ）2. A.  B. 

（ A ）3. A.  B. 

（ A ）4. A.  B. 

（ B ）5. A.  B. 

三、Jenny 在向朋友介绍她叔叔一家的情况，请根据所听到的内容，补全表格的信息。

	job	where	how	hobby
uncle	_____	_____	_____	_____
aunt	_____	school	_____	_____
Jane	student	school	_____	_____
Jack	_____	_____	car	playing sports

四、Jenny 向大家介绍了一种新的职业，你了解这个职业了吗？ 读一读，选择正确的答案。

Daisy is my new friend. She lives in Shenzhen. That is a big city of China. Her brother is a delivery boy. In Shenzhen, lots of

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

people order a takeout online. Because they are so busy. They are too tired to make meals. So they buy food online. The delivery boys take food quickly to them. Daisy's brother works very hard. He rides his electric bicycle to deliver the food on time. They don't have a rest even though it is raining. They are important but tired.

(B) 1. Daisy is _____.

A. Jenny's brother

B. Jenny's friend

C. a delivery boy

(A) 2. A delivery boy is _____.

A. 

B. 

C. 

(B) 3. In Shenzhen, lots of people order a takeout online. 这一句话正确的意思是：

A. 在深圳，很多人出去玩。

B. 在深圳，很多人在网上订外卖。

C. 在深圳，很多人在网上玩。

(C) 4. He rides his electric bicycle to... "Electric bicycle"可能是：_____。

A. 电动汽车

B. 自行车

C. 电动自行车

五、以下是 Jenny 新认识的朋友的个人名片信息卡，你获得了哪些信息呢？ 请仔细观察后回答问题。



Name: Daisy Sex: Girl
Age: 12 Height: 1.59cm
Job: Student
Address: 121#Park Road, Shenzhen
School: Park Road Primary School
Hobbies: Singing Dancing Reading
Riding a bike to school
Talking with friends
Good at: English Chinese Art
Not good at: math science

1. How old is Daisy?

She is twelve years old.

2. Where is Daisy from?

She is from Shenzhen, China.

3. What does Daisy like?

She likes singing, dancing, reading, riding a bike to school and talking with friends.

4. Can Daisy be a math teacher? Why or why not?

No. Because she is not good at math.

六、向 Jenny 介绍一下你将来想从事的职业吧。 不少于 5 句话。

I want to be a teacher. Because my teacher is very nice. She teaches us lots of things. I want to be a teacher like her. So I should study hard and learn more things for kids.





七、读一读 Mary 对自己未来职业的描述吧。

I want to be a doctor. When people are ill, I can help them. That makes me feel happy.
I should study hard for this.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

How do you feel?

第1课时 Part A Let's spell & Let's talk

☞(点拨见 120 页)

一、核心素养练

表情大搜查。你知道这些常用表情的英语含义吗？想一想，查一查，选一选。

afraid　shy　angry　happy　excited

1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 

二、核心素养练

我们学过很多寓言故事，从这些故事中我们能得到很多启发，同时在阅读的过程中还可以提升我们的综合素养。你熟悉下列这些寓言故事吗？

看图，选出正确的答案。

1. 
2. 

(　B　) 1. This story is about ____.
A. monkeys and bananas
B. monkeys and the moon
C. the tiger and the monkeys

(　B　) 2. —_____?
—It's about Cao Chong and an elephant.
A. What's this
B. What is this story about
C. Who are they

三、读一读，选一选。

(　B　) 1. They are afraid _____snakes?
A. with　B. of　C. for

(　C　) 2. This cartoon is _____animals.
A. of　B. to　C. about

(　A　) 3. The dog always _____a cat.
A. chases　B. chase　C. chasing

(　B　) 4. I'm too late. My mother is ___me.
A. happy to　B. angry with
C. angry to

四、按要求完成下列各题。

1. They are at school.（对画线部分提问）
_____

2. They will watch cartoons.（对画线部分提问）
_____

3. Because he hurts his finger.（补全问句）
_____ _____he cry?

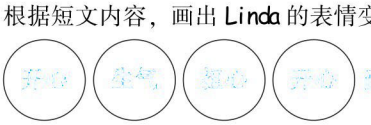
4. our cat a mouse now maybe is chasing（连词成句）
_____.

5. with why is the angry cat the mice（连词成句）
_____?

五、读一读，完成任务。

Today is Sunday. Linda is at home. She is watching TV. She is very happy. The show is about a bad boy. Linda is very angry with him. Then the bad boy chases a little boy. Linda is worried about the little boy. A police officer comes and saves the little boy. LindVa is happy again.

1. 根据短文内容，画出 Linda 的表情变化。



2. Linda is watching TV.　Yes　No

3. The bad boy makes Linda angry.　Yes　No

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Part 2 Let's learn—Write and say

☞(点拨见 120 页)

一、读一读，选词填空。（可重复使用）

be　am　is　are

1. Today ___is___ my birthday. I ___am___ very excited.
2. My father ___is___ a good basketball player.
3. My mother and father ___are___ very cold.
4. I want to ___be___ a nice police officer.
5. Don't ___be___ worried. I can help you.
6. They ___are___ hot.

二、读一读，选一选。

(C) 1. How _____ this film _____ you feel?
A. do; make　B. does; to make
C. does; make

(C) 2. In winter, we feel _____.
A. happy　B. sad　C. cold

(A) 3. I'm _____, so my mother is _____.
A. ill; worried　B. happy; sad
C. tired; happy

(A) 4. He broke（打破）his mother's favourite glass. He is _____. His mother is _____.
A. sad; angry　B. happy; happy
C. worried; happy

三、读一读，根据句子及图片提示，写出单词，补全对话。

1. —How ___do___ you feel?
—I ___feel___ ___sad___.



2. —Why is he so ___sad___?
—Because he is too late. His teacher is ___angry___ ___with___ him.



3. —Why are you so ___worried___?
—Because my mum isn't at home.



4. —Are you ___happy___?
—Yes, today is my birthday.



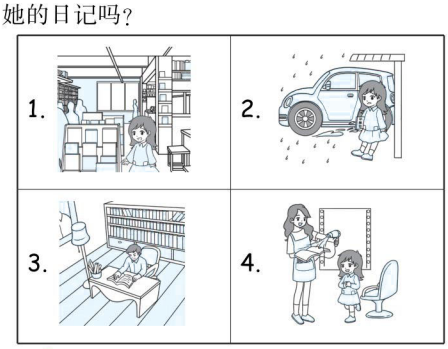
5. —How ___does___ he feel now?
—He is ___afraid___ of the dog.



四、核心素养练

我们要学会从图片中提炼出关键信息，来了解一些事情。萌萌今天在朋友圈发了一组照片。

你能为这些照片搭配上正确的语段，形成她的日记吗？



(3) My new storybook is wet. I can't read it. I am so sad.
(1) I buy my favourite storybook from the bookstore. I'm so happy.
(4) The lady helps me. She helps me make the book dry. I'm so happy. Thanks a lot!
(2) Suddenly it rains. The car is so fast. I'm wet... Oh, no! I'm so angry with the car driver.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

☞(点拨见 121 页)

话题话语 讨论情绪、感受。

词汇短语 描述情绪或感受的形容词

angry, afraid, sad, worried, happy, ill

重要句式

They're afraid of him.
The cat is angry with them.

能力目标 能够简单描述自己或他人的感受或情绪。

听力训练

一、听一听，根据 Lynn 的描述为下列表情排序。


(5)


(1)


(3)

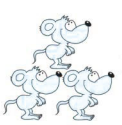

(2)


(4)

二、Jenny 今天读了一本书，听听看，判断以下各题与她所读的书本内容是（T）否(F)一致。

(T) 1. This book is about  .

(T) 2. We can see  on the cover (封面).

(F) 3.  hurt people.

三、Jenny 的朋友向 Jenny 介绍了自己正在读的一本书。听听看，选出与所听内容相符的一项。

(B) 1. The writer of the book is from _____.

A. China B. the UK C. the US

(C) 2. We can know about _____ from the book.

A. the names of the animals

B. where we work

C. how the cars, buses, trucks work

(A) 3. Jenny's friend thinks the book is _____.

A. interesting B. not interesting

C. bad

四、Jenny 在和妹妹玩以 feeling 为主题的头脑风暴，请根据 Jenny 提供的场景，写出符合要求的词汇吧。

1. It's Children's Day. The children have a big party. They are very happy.
2. Don't be afraid with that old man. He can't walk quickly.
3. Many girls are afraid of snakes. And some of them are afraid of spiders.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

4. Your best friend will leave your school and you. He will go to another city. You can't see him again. You will feel s____.
5. Your cat is in the tree. He can't get down. You and he are w____.

五、Jenny 的妹妹 Lynn 喜欢使用各种歌谣帮助自己记忆所学的内容。请你帮她把情绪感觉类的内容编写成歌谣吧。

I get a gift. I get a gift.
I'm happy. I'm happy.



I lost my gift. I lost my gift.



I'm sad. I'm sad.

Here is a big dog. Here is a big dog.



I'm afraid. I'm afraid.

Don't catch my cat. Don't catch my cat.



I'm angry. I'm angry.

Where's my cat? Where's my cat?



I'm worried. I'm worried.

六、这是 Jenny 今天读到的文章，请帮她理清文章的脉络吧。

One morning, a fox is very hungry. He looks for his breakfast. There is a crow in the tree. There is a piece of meat in her big mouth. The fox wants to get the meat. " Hello, Miss Crow! Good morning!"he says to the crow. The crow doesn't say a word. " Look at your black feathers（羽毛）! They are so beautiful. The crow flaps（拍打）her wings. " The tiger says that your voice is very bad!" the fox says again. The crow is angry. She opens her mouth and says, " No, I'm the best singer of the forest!" The meat drops down. Now the meat is in the fox's mouth. He goes home quickly with the meat.

1. The story is about a ____ and a ____.
(C) 2. A crow is ____.

A. 
B. 
C. 

(A) 3. Before（在……之前）the fox meets the crow, the fox is ____.
A. hungry B. happy C. tired
(B) 4. The crow is angry because ____.
A. the fox wants to eat the meat
B. the tiger says her voice is bad
C. she sees the fox
(A) 5. The crow thinks ____.
A. she can sing very well
B. the fox wants to eat her meat
C. her feathers aren't beautiful

七、你今天的感觉有什么变化吗？请做个小小的记录吧。不少于 5 句话。

Today is sunny. It's very warm. I feel very happy. In the afternoon, it's windy. I feel cold. And we can't play on the playground. We are sad. It's sunny in the evening. I like the snow. I'm so happy. How I'd love to walk home. I'm not so happy now.



口语测评

八、我是小小情绪观察员。根据图片描述下列同学的心情。

1. 
Amy
2. 
Peter
3. 
Jack

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

☞（点拨见 121 页）

一、读一读，下面各火车车厢中都有一个单词走错车厢了，请将它们圈出来，并写到正确车厢下的横线上。

well feel look

should

wrong ill should

must cats could

should

mice count sheep

二、读一读，选一选。

(C) 1. Who _____ talking about the film?
A. does B. be C. are

(C) 2. Don't _____ afraid.
A. are B. is C. be

(A) 3. Sam should _____ to school early.
A. go B. goes C. going

(B) 4. —What's wrong?
—_____
A. I'm ill.
B. I'm very happy.
C. You can't do that.

(A) 5. Let's _____ to the hospital to see a doctor.
A. go B. goes C. going

三、读一读，为下列图片选择正确的描述。

1. 
(B)

2. 
(D)

3. 
(C)

4. 
(A)

A. It's rainy today. He can't play football. He feels sad.

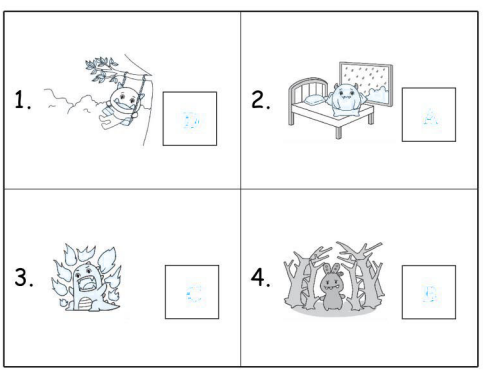
B. Amy is ill. She should go to the hospital.

C. Let's go to the zoo. We feel so happy.

D. Oh, Sam is so angry. He should take a deep breath.

四、阅读下面的绘本故事，为每幅插图匹配正确的语言描述。

This is my friend, the monster. Today he has different feelings, but he doesn't understand why. Let's help him.



A. This is sadness. It looks like a rainy day. When you have it, you should be sad. You may want to cry.

B. This is fear. It hides in the black shadows. When you are afraid, you feel tiny and helpless.

C. This is anger. When you're angry, you want to stomp, roar and shout.

D. This is happiness. It shines like the sun. When you have it, you are happy. You want to laugh , jump, dance, and play!

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 Part C Let's learn & play and sound

☞(点拨见 121 页)

一、根据图片提示，写出单词或短语，补全句子。

1.  2.  3.  4. 

1. He feels so _____. He should _____ _____ and _____.
2. It's _____ today. We should _____ _____.
3. She is not healthy. She should _____ _____.
4. The bear is _____. We should take it to _____.

二、读一读，选一选。

(B)1. He should _____ a deep breath.
A. takes B. take C. taking

(C)2. It's hot. I should wear _____ clothes.
A. warm B. winter C. cool

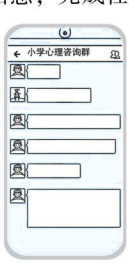
(C)3. How _____ Amy feel?
A. is B. do C. does

(A)4. —_____ should I do now?
—Go home, please.
A. What B. Why C. Where

三、核心素养练

我是小小心理辅导师。我们要能够通过他人言语、行动等信息推断出他人心理。

请观察微信群的信息，完成任务。



A: Hello, Miss Yang. I don't feel good today.

Miss Yang: Why? And what do you want to do?

A: I don't want to do anything. I feel so sad.

Miss Yang: What happened? Did you fight with your friends?

A: No. I didn't. _____

Miss Yang: Oh, no. I'm so sorry to hear that. I think you should do something for her.

A: What can I do? I can't take her home.

Miss Yang: You can take her to the pet hospital first. And then you can talk with your friends. Maybe someone can take her home.

A: Oh, yes! Thank you, Miss Yang. I feel better.

(C)1. Why is A so sad? Choose a sentence to put in the dialogue. (选句子放到对话中) [综合信息判断]

A. I was late for school. My teacher was angry.

B. I'm ill. I should go to the hospital.

C. I see a little cat on the street. She is ill. She is poor. But my mother doesn't want her.

(C)2. Miss Yang is a _____.
A. nurse B. student C. teacher

(A)3. A should _____.

A. take the cat to the hospital and help her find a home

B. take the cat home

C. go to the hospital and see a doctor

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

单元练习 Unit 6 Read and write (1)

☞（点拨见 121 页）

一、为下列图片选择正确的单词或短语。

(A) 1. 
A. ant
B. aunt

(A) 2. 
A. grass
B. glass

(B) 3. 
A. fly
B. stuck

(B) 4. 
A. stand up
B. sit down

(A) 5. 
A. mud
B. water

二、读一读，选择正确的单词填空。

ill sad hungry warm cold bad

1. That man is very ____bad____. He doesn't do good things.
2. I'm ____hungry____. I want to eat some noodles.
3. It's snowy today. It's very ____cold____.
4. Oh, no. My mother is ____ill____. She should see a doctor.
5. These winter clothes can make you ____warm____.
6. Don't be ____sad____. We can help you.

三、读一读，选一选。

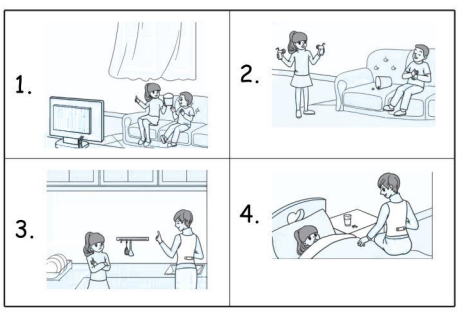
(B) 1. We _____ ride our bikes to the park when my father comes home.
A. are B. are going to
C. want

(B) 2. Let _____ help you.
A. is B. us C. I

(A) 3. Please pull _____ out _____ the pool. 【全书导学号 1423494】
A. me; of B. I; for C. me; to

(C) 4. Don't _____. I won't hurt you.
A. worried B. sorry C. worry

四、请根据图片的顺序，将下面的语段按正确的顺序排列，并将备选的句子填入题中的横线上。



(C) —Hey, where's my popcorn?
—Yum! It was so good.
—What? How could you eat all the popcorn? (1) ____D____

(A) —Mum, I feel ill. Should I count to ten, too?
—No, dear. (2) ____A____

(E) —Hey, let's have some pop corn.
—Great! I'm so happy. I love pop corn!
—Here you are. I'll go and get some drinks. (3) ____C____

(B) —Mum, if I feel angry, what should I do?
—Well, first, take a deep breath. (4) ____B____
—After that?
—After that, you won't feel so angry.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

A. You should see a doctor.
B. Then you should count to ten.
C. Wait for me.
D. We should share!

五、读一读，选择正确的单词填空，补全语段。（要使用单词的正确形式，其中一个单词可重复使用一次）

chase happy play afraid help pull

It's Sunday morning. Look, some children 1. _____ in the park. They are very 2. _____. Now, some boys 3. _____ Tom. Suddenly, Tom falls into the river." 4. _____!" Tom calls. The children are 5. _____. Some men run to the river and 6. _____ Tom out of the water. They are very 7. _____ again.

六、核心素养练

我会得体地给出建议。请读一读，根据对话情境选择正确的句子。

John: Hi, Mike! 1. _____
Mike: No, I don't feel good.
John: 2. _____
Mike: Someone took my new bike. I can't find it. 3. _____
John: Take a breath first.
Mike: What should I do after that?
John: 4. _____
Mike: OK.
John: Let's go and ask.
Later.
Mike: Oh, I see. 5. _____ Thank you.
John: You are welcome.

A. Why?
B. Are you OK?
C. Because there was a car coming. So they put my bike beside the street.
D. I'm so angry!
E. You should go and look for the bike. You can ask our classmates.

七、阅读短文，选择正确答案。

In winter, the weather is very cold. Some people fall ill in winter. If you don't wear warm clothes, you will have a cold. How do you feel if you have a cold? You will be very tired. Your temperature will be higher than 37℃. Then you may have a fever. But don't worry! If you are ill, see a doctor, take some medicine and stay in bed for a few days. Drink some more hot water, and you will be better soon.

(B) 1. It is talking about _____.
A. drinking some more hot water
B. what we can do when we are ill
C. how to be strong

(C) 2. Sometimes, we will have the flu（流感）. What shouldn't we do?
A. Take medicine or stay in bed.
B. Go to see a doctor or wear a mask（口罩）.
C. Play with our friends for a long time.

(A) 3. We will have a cold because _____.
A. we don't wear warm clothes on the cold days
B. we are too tired
C. we don't drink hot water

4. Your temperature will be higher than 37℃. "Temperature means"" 体温". Yes No

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 6 Part C Story time

☞（点拨见 121 页）

基础夯实

一、快速阅读故事，把握主题和文章脉络。

（教材第 65 页）

（ A ）1. This is a story about _____.

A.  B. 

C. 

（ C ）2. What does Zip want to do?

A. She wants to make some popcorn.

B. She wants to see a film.

C. She wants to watch her favourite TV show with some popcorn.

（ A ）3. How does Zip feel when Zoom goes to make popcorn?

A. She feels happy.

B. She feels sad.

C. She feels afraid!

二、认真观察、阅读，仔细回味，把握细节。

1. What will Zoom do when Zip wants some popcorn?

He will go and make some _____.

2. Zoom doesn't come back quickly. Zip thinks that he must _____.

be making lots of popcorn

3. Is Zoom making popcorn?

No, he isn't _____.

4. How does Zip feel when she finds Zoom?

_____.

Angry

能力提升

三、阅读短文，选出正确的选项。

Many years ago, there was an old apple tree. A little boy liked to play with the apple tree. The apple tree liked him very much. One day, the little boy was sad. He wanted some toys. The apple tree gave him all his apples. The boy got money by selling the apples and bought his toys. Then he didn't come back. The apple tree was sad.

After a long time, the boy became a young man. He came to see the apple tree. He was worried. He wanted to buy a house. But he didn't have money. The apple tree let him cut down the trunk to get money. The young man was happy. Then he didn't come back.

When he came back again, he was an old man. And the apple tree just had a root. The old man sat on the root and rested. The apple tree was so happy.

（ C ）1. 文中两个主人公的关系很像现实生活中的_____.

A. good friends

B. teacher and student

C. parents and child

（ A ）2. The little boy felt sad because _____.

A. he wanted to buy some toys but he had no money

B. he wanted to play with the apple tree

C. he wanted to buy a house

（ A ）3. The little boy didn't come back. How did the apple tree feel?

A. He felt sad.

B. He felt worried.

C. He felt happy.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

单元综合测试（二）

听力部分

语言知识点

给出合理建议。

词汇点	动作短语	重要句式
	see a doctor, wear warm clothes, do more exercise, take a deep breath, count to ten	What's wrong? Your father is ill. He should see a doctor this morning. Don't be sad.

语言运用 能够根据他人的感受或情绪，给出合理化的建议。

听力训练

一、听一听，帮 Jenny 选出合适的答语。

(C) 1. A. She should see a doctor.
B. You should see a doctor.
C. He should take a deep breath.

(B) 2. A. He likes singing.
B. He is happy.
C. He is a postman.

(A) 3. A. You should wear warm clothes.
B. You should take a deep breath.
C. You should see a doctor.

二、听一听 Jenny 所遇到的事件，为下面图片排序。

(3) 

(2) 

(1) 

(5) 

(4) 

三、Jenny 把她的故事讲给自己的朋友听，听一听，判断以下内容是(T)否(F)与所听内容相符。

(F) 1. Jenny is talking with Linda in the classroom.

(T) 2. Jenny can't go to the zoo with Linda.

(F) 3. Jenny will go to Linda's home to play with Linda.

四、听一听 Jenny 和朋友的对话，根据对话内容选择正确的一项。

(B) 1. What are they talking about?
A. They are talking about Jenny's dog.
B. They are talking about the pictures.
C. They are talking about a zoo.

(B) 2. What happened to Jenny?
A. She feels happy to see Linda.
B. She hurt her foot and went to see a doctor.
C. She played with Linda in a zoo.

(C) 3. How did Lynn feel when she saw a snake at the zoo?
A. She was very happy.
B. She was sad.
C. She was afraid.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

五、Jenny 和 Linda 在体验小小心理师，和她们一起观察应诊的同学，来判断他们的感受，并给出恰当的建议吧。

1.  2.  3.  4. 

1. Oh, he is so _____. Please _____ a _____ _____. And _____ to _____.
2. He i very _____.
   You can play with your friends.
   Or you can listen to some _____ music.
3. She is so _____.
   Please _____ _____ warm _____.
4. Don't _____ _____.
   We can help you. Tell us what happened.

六、读一读，给 1－5 选择正确的单词补全 Jenny 今天的日记。第 6 题写出你的想法。

sad　afraid　worried　sunny　ask

Monday, March, 2　　Sunny

Today is 1. _____. I help schoolmates with Linda. First, we are 2. _____. Can we do well? Some students come to 3. _____ us for help. A little girl looks very 4. _____. She cries and cries. She meets two bad boys on her way to school. She is 5. _____. We try to help her. We should 6. _____.

七、读一读 Linda 的日记，完成任务。

Monday, March 3　　Sunny

Today I go to the psychological clinic（心理诊所）of our school. We are special doctors there. We see many students. They all need help. I feel sad and sorry about it. Some students are angry with their friends. We try to let them take a deep breath and say something happy about their friends. Then they feel better. Some students are sad. We give big hugs to some of them. And they feel good. Some of them are ill so they feel so sad. We can't help them. We call the real doctor to help them. I wish they can be better soon. I'm very angry that some bad boys hurt little students out of the school and in our school. We must do something to help the little students. We will have a club.

Today I learn many things from the clinic. I wish everyone can be happy. And I will do more to help others.

1. 根据 Linda 和 Jenny 的经历，为 Linda 的日记补写日期和天气。
2. How does Linda feel about the students who come to the clinic?
   She feels _____ and _____.
3. What should the angry students do?
   They should _____ and _____.
4. What will they do for the little students?
   They will _____.

八、对于 Linda 和 Jenny 遇到的不同心理感受的同学，你有什么建议和好的办法吗？（试挑一种来写一写）

_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____

口语测评

九、我是小小心理诊疗师。你来做心理辅导师，请你的同学或朋友来扮演需要心理疏导的同学。你需要了解他们的情况，给他们正确的建议。

1.  2.  3. 

句型：Are you OK?
　　What's wrong?
　　No, I feel...
　　You should...

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Recycle 2

阶段复习 ☞(点拨见 122 页)

一、选出与句中画线单词同类的一项。

(A) 1. My father is a fisherman.
A. pilot B. type C. gym

(A) 2. She is worried about her son now.
A. ill B. take C. chase

(B) 3. He studies Chinese in Hubei now.
A. shall B. goes C. goal

二、读一读，猜一猜，在横线上写出单词，并将图片的序号填入题前括号内。

(D) 1. He works at a factory. He is a _____.

(C) 2. He gets the letters and mails and brings them to people. He is a _____.

(A) 3. Linda is not happy today. She is _____.

(E) 4. It's cold. You should _____ more warm clothes.

(B) 5. Don't be _____. Take a deep breath, please.

A. 
B. 
C. 
D. 
E. 

三、读一读，选一选。

(C) 1. Where _____ your grandfather live? 【全书导学号 1423494】
A. is B. do C. does

(B) 2. My pen pal _____.
A. like flying a kite
B. likes flying a kite
C. likes fly kites

(C) 3. Tom should _____ more exercise.
A. has B. does C. do

(B) 4. Don't _____ afraid _____ it. It's nice.
A. are; for B. be; of
C. are; of

(A) 5. My mother is angry _____ me.
A. with B. to C. of

四、读一读，看一看，根据图片顺序为下列句子排序（1，2，3……）。

1. 
2. 
3. 


(3) Look, he is doing word puzzles now.

(1) The cold weather makes him feel cold. He should wear more warm clothes.

(2) I think this is a great job! They can help others a lot!

五、将所给单词按正确顺序排列，形成问句，写到横线上。并根据图片提示，选择正确的答句，将序号填入题前括号内。

1. 
2. 
3. 

4. 
5. 

(C) 1. is what hobby John's _____?

A. He likes reading stories.
B. He likes playing sports.
C. He likes going hiking.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

(A) 2. your father what do does

_____?

A. He's a businessman.

B. He's a coach.

C. He is a police officer.

(B) 3. work where does mother your

_____?

A. She works at sea.

B. She works in a pet hospital.

C. She works on a rescue plane.

(B) 4. does Steven how work go to

_____?

A. He goes to work by car.

B. He goes to work by bike.

C. He goes to work on foot.

(C) 5. should what she do

_____?

A. She should wear warm clothes.

B. She should do more exercise.

C. She should go to see a doctor.

六、按要求完成下列句子。

1. I like singing songs and reading stories.（用 Danny 替换 I 改写句子）

_____

2. My grandfather lives in Tianjin.（改成一般疑问句）

_____

3. Does Lynn like reading books?（作否定回答）

_____

七、读一读，选择恰当的句子补全对话。

John: 1. _____ His name is Peter, too.

Peter: Really? 2. _____

John: No, he lives in Australia.

Peter: 3. _____

John: No, but he wants to be a fireman. Firemen are important in Australia.

Peter: That's cool! 4. _____

John: He likes doing sports and reading stories.

Peter: I like him. 5. _____

John: Sure! Let's write an email to him.

A. Can I also be his pen pal?

B. Come and see my new pen pal.

C. What are his hobbies?

D. Is he a fireman?

E. Does he live in the UK, too?

八、阅读短文，完成任务。

Today I'm so happy. Because I'll take a trip with my family. We are going to Hong Kong by plane. But my father is worried. We can't take our dog with us. My mother is worried, too. She can't water her flowers. My aunt is good. She will come and take care of our dog and the flowers. We'll have a good time.

1. I feel _____ today.

2. We are going to _____ a _____ to _____.

3. My parents feel _____.

4. My aunt is nice to help us. Yes No

九、你想交笔友吗？请向你的笔友来介绍一下自己，包括家人信息、爱好以及自己将来想从事的工作等，不少于 40 个单词。

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 基础默写卡

Part

一、写出下列重点单词（英汉互译）。

1. 科学 _____ 2. 博物馆 _____ 3. 邮局 _____ 4. 书店 _____
5. 电影院 _____ 6. 医院 _____ 7. ask _____ 8. sir _____

二、写出下列短语。

1. 科学博物馆 _____ 2. 紧邻，在……近旁 _____ 3. 博物馆商店 _____

三、写出下列重点句子（英汉互译）。

1. 博物馆商店在哪儿？

_____

2. 它在大门附近。

_____

3. What a great museum! _____

4. Excuse me, sir. _____

Part

一、写出下列重点单词（英汉互译）。

1. 十字路口 _____ 2. 转弯 _____ 3. 左 _____ 4. 笔直地 _____
5. 右 _____ 6. interesting _____ 7. Italian _____ 8. restaurant _____
9. pizza _____ 10. street _____ 11. get _____ 12. GPS _____
13. gave _____ 14. feature _____ 15. follow _____ 16. far _____
17. tell _____

二、写出下列短语。

1. 左转 _____ 2. 右转 _____ 3. 直行 _____

三、写出下列重点句子（英汉互译）。

1. 我们怎么到那儿？

_____

2. 到书店左转。

_____

3. Let's turn right and then turn right again. _____

4. Follow me, please! _____

5. My new GPS works! _____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 基础默写卡

Part A

一、写出下列重点单词（英汉互译）。

1. （表示方式）乘 by
2. 公共汽车 bus
3. 飞机 plane
4. 出租汽车 taxi
5. （大）船 ship
6. 地铁 subway
7. 火车 train
8. Mrs 夫人
9. early 早的

二、写出下列短语。

1. 来上学 come to school
2. 乘小汽车 by car
3. 骑自行车 by bike
4. 步行 on foot
5. 乘出租汽车 by taxi
6. 乘地铁 by subway

三、写出下列重点句子（英汉互译）。

1. 你怎么来学校的？ How do you come to school?
2. 通常我走路来。 Usually, I come on foot.
3. Sometimes I come by bus. 有时候我乘公共汽车来。
4. That's good exercise. 那是很好的运动。
5. Let's go to the nature park. 让我们去自然公园吧。
6. How do you get to the USA from China? 你怎样从中国到美国？

Part B

一、写出下列重点单词（英汉互译）。

1. （使）放慢速度；慢的 slow
2. 减少；降低 down
3. 停下 stop
4. helmet 头盔
5. must 必须
6. wear 戴
7. attention 注意
8. traffic 交通
9. Munich 慕尼黑
10. Germany 德国
11. Alaska 阿拉斯加州
12. sled 雪橇
13. fast 快的
14. ferry 渡船
15. Papa Westray 威斯特雷岛
16. Scotland 苏格兰

二、写出下列短语（英汉互译）。

1. 慢下来 slow down
2. pay attention to 注意
3. traffic lights 交通信号灯

三、写出下列重点句子（英汉互译）。

1. 在美国骑自行车的人必须戴（头盔）。 In the USA people on bikes must wear one.
2. 别闯红灯！ Don't go on the red light!
3. 我必须注意交通信号灯！ I must pay attention to the traffic lights!
4. 我们必须停下来等。 We must stop and wait.
5. You must wear a life jacket. 你必须穿一件救生衣。
6. Don't run on the ferry. 不要在渡船上跑。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 基础默写卡

Part

一、写出下列重点单词（英汉互译）。

1. 拜访 visit　2. 电影 film　3. 旅行 trip　4. 超市 supermarket
5. 晚上；傍晚 evening　6. 在今晚 tonight　7. 明天 tomorrow　8. lesson 课

二、写出下列短语（英汉互译）。

1. 看电影 see a film　2. 去旅行 take a trip　3. 下周 next week
4. weekend plan 周末计划　5. 今天早上 this morning　6. 今天下午 this afternoon
7. 今天晚上 this evening　8. 去超市 go to the supermarket
9. 拜访我的祖父母 visit my grandparents

三、写出下列重点句子（英汉互译）。

1. 你明天打算做什么？ What are you going to do tomorrow?
2. 我要上美术课。 I'm going to have an art lesson.
3. 我们要到人民公园去画画。 We're going to draw some plants in People's Park.
4. Sounds great! 听起来很棒！
5. I have to do my homework now. 我现在必须做作业了。

Part

一、写出下列重点单词（英汉互译）。

1. 词典 dictionary　2. 滑稽的 comic　3. 单词 word　4. 明信片 postcard
5. space 太空　6. travel 旅行　7. half 一半　8. price 价格
9. together 一起　10. mooncake 月饼　11. poem 诗　12. moon 月亮

二、写出下列短语（英汉互译）。

1. （儿童的）连环画册 comic books　2. 单词书 word book
3. Mid-Autumn Festival 中秋节　4. get together 聚会
5. space travel 太空旅行　6. lots of 许多

三、写出下列重点句子（英汉互译）。

1. 你们打算去哪儿？ Where are you going?
2. 我们打算去电影院。 We're going to the cinema.
3. 你们什么时候去？ When are you going?
4. It's half price then! 那时半价！
5. Why not go on Tuesday? 为什么不星期二去呢？
6. I have lots of comic books about space. 我有许多有关太空的连环画册。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 4 基础默写卡

Part A

一、写出下列单词的汉语意思。

1. pen pal _____ 2. hobby _____ 3. jasmine _____ 4. idea _____

二、仿照例子写一写。

例：do – doing

1. dance – _____ 2. sing – _____

3. read stories – _____ 4. play football – _____

5. do kung fu – _____

三、写出下列重点句子（英汉互译）。

1. 彼得有什么爱好？ _____

2. 他喜欢读故事。 _____

3. He also likes singing. _____

4. I'm going to teach him the Chinese song "Jasmine Flower"! _____

Part B

一、写出下列重点单词（英汉互译）。

1. 学习 _____ 2. 谜 _____ 3. 远足 _____ 4. Canberra _____

5. amazing _____ 6. shall _____ 7. goal _____ 8. join _____

9. club _____ 10. share _____

二、写出下列单词的第三人称单数形式。

1. do _____ 2. cook _____ 3. study _____

4. go _____ 5. have _____ 6. teach _____

三、写出下列短语（第三人称单数形式）。

1. 做中餐 _____ 2. 学汉语 _____

3. 填字谜 _____ 4. 去远足 _____

四、写出下列重点句子（英汉互译）。

1. 他住在悉尼吗？ _____

2. 不，他没有。 _____

3. 他喜欢猜字谜和远足吗？ _____

4. 是的，他喜欢。 _____

5. I'm writing an email to my new pen pal in Australia. _____

6. Can I also be his pen pal? _____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 5 基础默写卡

Part A

一、写出下列重点单词（英汉互译）。

1. 工厂 factory　2. 工人 worker　3. 邮递员 postman　4. 商人；企业家 businessman

5. 警察 police officer　6. country 国家　7. head teacher 班主任

二、仿照例子写一写。

例：sing – singer

1. drive – driver　2. clean – cleaner　3. write – writer　4. dance – dancer

5. work – worker　6. play – player　7. teach – teacher　8. wait – waiter

例：postman – postwoman

9. businessman – businesswoman　10. policeman – policewoman

三、写出下列重点句子（英汉互译）。

1. 他是做什么的？ What does he do?

2. 他是商人。 He's a businessman.

3. Do you want to be a head teacher, too? 你也想当班主任吗？

4. I want to be a businessman. 我想当商人。

Part B

一、写出下列单词（英汉互译）。

1. 渔民 fisherman　2. 科学家 scientist　3. 飞行员 pilot　4. 教练 coach

5. sea 大海　6. stay 保持　7. university 大学　8. gym 体育馆

9. if 如果　10. reporter 记者　11. use 使用　12. type 打字

13. quickly 迅速地　14. secretary 秘书

二、写出下列短语的汉语意思。

1. a healthy life 健康的生活　2. study hard 努力学习　3. stay healthy 保持健康

4. a sports reporter 体育记者　5. type very quickly 打字很快

三、写出下列重点句子（英汉互译）。

1. 他在哪儿工作？ Where does he work?

2. 他在海上工作。 He works at sea.

3. 他怎么上班？ How does he go to work?

4. 他骑自行车上班。 He goes to work by bike.

5. If you likes sports, you can be a coach, a sports reporter, or a PE teacher. 如果你喜欢体育，你可以成为一名教练、体育记者或体育老师。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 6 基础默写卡

Part A

一、写出下列重点单词（英汉互译）。

1. 生气的 _____　2. 害怕 _____　3. 难过的 _____
4. 担心的；发愁的 _____　5. 高兴的 _____　6. chase _____
7. mice _____　8. bad _____　9. hurt _____
10. ill _____

二、写出下列重点句子（英汉互译）。

1. 它们害怕它。 _____
2. 这只猫很生它们的气。 _____
3. What's this cartoon about? _____
4. He chases the mice. _____
5. Because the mice are bad. _____

Part B

一、写出重点单词（英汉互译）。

1. 穿 _____　2. 更多的 _____　3. 深的 _____
4. 呼吸 _____　5. 数数 _____　6. wrong _____
7. should _____　8. feel _____　9. well _____
10. sit _____　11. grass _____　12. hear _____
13. ant _____　14. worry _____　15. stuck _____
16. mud _____　17. pull _____　18. everyone _____

二、写出下列短语（英汉互译）。

1. 看病 _____　2. 深深吸一口气 _____　3. 数到十 _____
4. do more exercise _____　5. wear warm clothes _____
6. sit on the grass _____　7. stuck in the mud _____

三、写出下列重点句子（英汉互译）。

1. 怎么了？ _____
2. 你爸爸病了。 _____
3. 他今天早上应该去看病。 _____
4. 别伤心。 _____
5. What should he do? _____
6. You should do more exercise. _____
7. How does he feel now? _____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

荣德基 主编

综合应用创新题

《达标检测卷》+《答案及点拨》

使用说明：起订后将中间的检测卷取出测试使用，剩余为课时练和检测卷答案。

（87–118）

Unit 1 达标检测卷
Unit 2 达标检测卷
Unit 3 达标检测卷
期 中 检测卷
Unit 4 达标检测卷
Unit 5 达标检测卷
Unit 6 达标检测卷
期 末 检测卷

课时部分 参考答案及点拨 / 77
检测卷部分 参考答案及点拨 / 124

检测卷

六年级 英语

上（PEP版）

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料



课时部分

Unit 1 How can I get there?

课时练 1 Part A Let's try ~ Let's talk

一、1. bookstore 2. post office 3. zoo 4. museum

二、1. B 2. A 3. B

4. C **点拨**：boy 或 man 都不可用来直接称呼人，而 sir 是对男性的礼貌称呼。

5. C **点拨**：在邮局应是寄信。

三、3 1 4 2

四、1. Where is the park?

2. Is there a library near the museum?

3. What a great museum! **点拨**：what 引导的感叹句结构为“What (+a/an) +形容词+名词 (+主语+谓语)!”。

4. He wants to buy a postcard

5. Where is the museum shop

五、1. B 2. C 3. E 4. D 5. A

方法点拨:本题用**语境判断法**。即根据上下文的相关信息来确定答案。如第 1 小题后出现的句子是向他人提出帮助的请求，所以此处应为 Excuse me。而第 2 小题之后出现的相关回应为描述位置，所以此处应该是在问“Where is...?”。

课时练 2 Part A Let's learn ~ Make a map and talk

一、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. C 5. A

二、1. cinema 2. bookstore 3. post office

4. hospital 5. museum

三、1. Yes, there is 2. Where 3. zoo

4. tea shop 5. clothes shop

方法点拨:本题用**图文匹配法**。即先观察图片中的关键信息，然后与文字提供的信息相匹配，得出答案。如通过观察可知在图片中人物附近有图书馆、茶店和服装店，而稍远的地方有公园与动物园。掌握这些信息再去补全对话就很容易了。

四、1. Yuhua

2. near **点拨**：此题需要综合原句的信息得出答案。由短文第二句可知我的家在超市旁边，而第四句告诉我们宠物医院在超市附近，所以可知宠物医院应在我家附近，离得并不远。

3. B 4. C

培优练 周末主题素养练 (一)

听力材料：

一、1. I want to buy some toys.

2. Let's play and have a picnic there.

3. We can see robots there.

二、In the morning, I will go to an English school to learn English. Then I will go to a pet shop with my mother. We want to buy a little cat there. In the afternoon, I want to play football with my friends at the park. In the evening, I want to see a film at the new cinema with my parents.

三、Let's meet at the big bookstore. It's next to my house. Then let's go to the new cinema. It's next to the zoo. Near the zoo, there is a library. We can read books there.

答案：

一、1. B 2. A 3. B

二、1 3 4 2

方法点拨:本题用**三步两遍听音法**。第一步：看题，弄懂题目要求。第二步：第一遍听音，边听边做，注意捕捉关键信息。第三步：第二遍听音，边做边检查。

三、1. C 2. C 3. B

四、1. bookstore 2. park 3. science museum

4. cinema 5. hospital

五、(一) 1. 书店 2. 公园 3. 科技博物馆

(二) 1. F 2. F 3. T 4. T

六、范文

Our school is on the Market Street. There is a bookshop near our school. In front of our school, there is a cinema. And a park is near the cinema. We like to play in the park. There is a pet hospital near our school, too. You can take your pet there.

七、1. Where is the cinema? I want to see a film.

2. Where is the bookstore? I want to buy a book.

课时练 3 Part B Let's try ~ Let's talk

一、1. pizza 2. restaurant 3. Italian 4. get

5. interesting

二、1. B

2. A **点拨**：表示在某一个具体的地点时，应使用介词 at。

3. C **点拨**：an 应用在以元音音素开始的单词前，符合要求的为 C 答案。

4. B

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

三、1. T 2. T 3. T 4. F

方法点拨:本题用**关键信息匹配法**。即观察图片中的关键信息与文字中的关键信息是否匹配，从而得到答案。如第 1 小题中的关键信息为 Italian restaurant，意大利餐厅，通过观察图片，可以发现图片与句子信息匹配。

四、1. C 2. B

五、1. B 2. D 3. E 4. C 5. A

课时练 4 Part B

Let's learn ~ Be a tour guide

一、1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T

方法点拨:本题用**分类记忆法**。即使用词性或词类记忆词汇的方法，来区分、判断两个词是否为同一类。如第 1 小题中 restaurant 为餐厅，为处所类名词，而 museum 指博物馆，也是处所类的名词，所以两者为同一类。而第 2 小题中 beside 的意思为“在……旁边”，为表示方位的介词，而 park 为公园，是处所类名词，两者不是同一类。

二、1. crossing 2. left
3. turn right 4. straight

三、1. Where is the hospital
2. Turn left at the zoo
3. turn left; turn right

四、1. Yes 2. No 3. No
4. post office（或 toy shop）
5. science museum（或 post office）
6. Go straight and turn right at the clothes shop.
点拨：起点为 park，我们可以处在 park 的上方或右边，假设为右边，则答案为直行，然后在服装店处右转。
7. B

课时练 5 Part B

Read and write ~ Let's wrap it up

一、park; restaurant cinema zoo（再写出一个表示处所的名词即可，答案不唯一）
noodles; pizza salad rice（再写出一个表示食物的名词即可，答案不唯一）
ask; follow tell go（再写出一个动词即可，答案不唯一）

二、1. restaurant 2. cinema 3. pizza
4. follow **点拨**：此处明显要选择一个动词，观察第一题中出现的三个动词，follow the GPS，跟随 GPS 的指引，搭配比较合理，所以答案为 follow。

三、1. B **方法点拨**:本题用**排除法**。即依次排除不合理的答案，得出正确答案。如 A 选项没有使用第三人称单数形式，应为错误的，而 C 选项在缺少 be 动词的情况下，不能独立作谓语，所以答案为 B。
2. C
3. A **点拨**：let's 后跟动词原形。
4. A 5. B

四、1. A 2. B 3. A 4. B

五、1. The park is near the post office 或 The post office is near the park
2. How can I get to the zoo? **点拨**：第一个句子是在描述路线，第二个句子告诉了我们目的地，所以问句是在问到动物园的路线。
3. Where is he?
4. Where is the hospital?
5. Is the new science museum far from here?

六、1. He wants to go to the science museum.
2. Turn right at the school. Then go straight.
3. far from

七、1. No 2. No 3. Yes 4. No

课时练 6 Part C Story time

一、（一）1. No 2. No 3. Yes 4. Yes 5. No
（二）1. Near the London Eye.
2. London Eye; next to; film museum
3. Thames; straight; left
4. Three; small
（三）1. B 2. A

二、1. B 2. C 3. ABC

培优练 周末主题素养练（二）

听力材料：

一、Go straight. Turn right. Go straight.
Turn left. Go straight. Turn right.
Go straight. Turn right. Turn left.
Turn left.

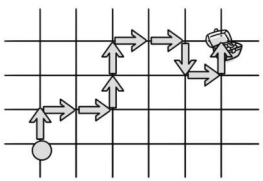
二、1. There is a shop near the museum.
2. The park is far from our school.
3. Turn right at the traffic light.
4. Turn left at the crossing and you can see the park.
5. It's near the crossing.

三、1. Where do you want to go, Danny?
2. Is there a park near the bookstore?
3. How can we get to the museum?
4. Is the museum far from the restaurant?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

四、We all want to have a happy weekend. Jenny and I want to go to the museum to watch the robots. Lisa wants to go to the park to fly kites. Tom wants to go to the restaurant to have a big dinner with his family. Tony wants to go to the shoe shop to buy a pair of new shoes. Lucy wants to go to the pet hospital. Her dog is not well.

答案：

一、

二、1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T

三、1. C 2. A 3. B 4. B

四、1－C 2－D 3－B 4－A

五、1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. F

六、1. B 2. D 3. E 4. C 5. A

七、略。

八、范文

My Weekend

This weekend, I want to go to the library with my parents. It's near my house. We can go straight from our house and turn right at the second traffic lights. Then we can see the big library on our right. We can read interesting books there. In the afternoon, we want to go to the cinema to see a film. We can go straight from the library, and then turn left at the Happy Restaurant. We can see the cinema on our left. In the evening, we can have dinner at the restaurant. And then we can go home by bus.

九、略。

Unit 2 Ways to go to school

课时练 1 Part A Let's try ~ Let's talk

一、1. good 2. usually 3. car
4. go 5. Miss

二、1. A 2. A
3. B 点拨：图片中的老师为女性，所以选择Mrs“夫人”。
4. B

三、1. How; school; go; school; bike
2. How; by bus
3. go; on; walk
4. Do; by; Sometimes; by

四、1. B 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. C
6. often watch TV

课时练 2 Part A Let's learn ~ Write and say

一、1. plane 2. ship 3. subway 4. bus

二、1. No 2. No 3. Yes 4. Yes

三、1. How; go to; from; by train（答案不唯一）
2. far from; No; near; How; come; on foot
3. by bus; No; bus; taxi

四、1. nature park; Sunday 2. By bus
3. far 4. will

培优练 周末主题素养练（一）

听力材料：

一、1. I usually get up at 7: 00.
2. We live near the school. We often go to school by bike. Sometimes we walk to school.
3. David often has milk and bread for breakfast. What about you?
4. We always read a book on Wednesday. We have a reading lesson.
5. Tom sometimes does his homework after dinner.
6. We usually watch TV on Saturday evening.

二、1. —Jenny, do you always come to school by bus?
—No, I live near the school. I often walk to school.
2. —Look at Xiaoming. He lives far from here. How does he come to school?
—He often comes to school by bike. He likes riding.
3. —Tommy's home is not in this city. Does he come to school by car?
—No, he often comes here by train.
4. —Tony's house is near a big river. How does he come to school in winter? By ship?
—No, he can come to school by taxi.

三、**Jenny**: Winter holiday is coming. Amy, where do you want to go?
Amy: I want to go to the new nature park.
Jenny: Oh, I know it. Is it far from your house?
Amy: No, it's not far.
Jenny: Do you want to go there by bus?
Amy: No, I will walk.
Jenny: You will have a good time. I usually go to the nature park on Sundays.

四、Winter holiday is coming. I want to go on trips this winter. I want to go to China by plane. Beijing is a famous city in China. I will go to Beijing first. Then, I will go to

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Hong Kong by train. It's very famous and beautiful. I want to go shopping there. Then I want to go to the USA by ship. It's a long trip. I want to go to New York to see the Statue of Liberty. I will come back to Canada by plane. I want to go to Ottawa, the capital city of Canada by bike. It's near my home. I like it very much. I will have a wonderful holiday.

答案:

一、U S O A S U

二、1. 第一幅图 2. 第一幅图
3. 第三幅图 4. 第三幅图

三、1. F 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T

四、(4) Ottawa D (3) New York C
(1) Beijing B (2) Hong Kong A

五、1. bike 2. bus
3. plane 4. subway
5. taxi

六、1. always; books 2. by bike
3. Sometimes 4. sometimes
5. goes; by bus/ on foot

七、1. B 2. A 3. Yes 4. No

八、范文

My Family's Day

There are three people in my family. My father is a teacher. He often goes to work by car. Sometimes he goes by bus. My mother is a nurse. She works near home. She usually rides her bike to work. I'm a student. I often go to school by car. Sometimes I go to school by bus with my father. We are in the same school!

九、Xiaoming often goes to school by bike.
Xiaoming's father often goes to work by car. Sometimes he goes to work by bus.

课时练3 Part B Let's try ~ Let's talk

一、1. traffic lights 2. helmet 3. Attention
4. must 5. wear

方法点拨:本题用**语境筛选法**。即通过上下文提供的信息来选择恰当的一项。如第1小题,可以放在十字路口,对车辆和行人好的应该是交通信号灯。第2小题的词出现在the后面,肯定是个名词,由后一句可知是头盔。

二、1. take **点拨**:can为情态动词,与动词搭配使用,by为介词,不适用。
2. green 3. don't need to 4. on
5. get

三、1. A 2. A 3. B 4. B

四、1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T

课时练4 Part B
Let's learn ~ Role-play

一、1. oranges 2. crossing 3. get 4. first

二、1. green; go **点拨**:这个手势是通行手势,所以灯应该是绿色,并给出通行信号。
2. red; stop **点拨**:这个手势是禁止通行的手势,对应的信号灯应该是红色。
3. yellow; slow down; stop **点拨**:这个手势是慢行等待的手势,对应的信号灯应该为黄色。
4. turn right **点拨**:这是右转手势。在很多路口,红灯时虽不能直行,但可以右转。

三、1. C 2. A 3. A 4. B

四、1. A **方法点拨**:本题用**概括推断法**。rules单词所在的句子为本段文字的主题句。阅读后可知短文讲的都是交通规则,所以rules的意思为"规则"。
2. B 3. B

课时练5 Part B
Read and write ~ Let's wrap it up

一、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. C

二、1. A 2. B 3. B 4. A

三、1. A
2. B **点拨**:it是主语,此处缺少谓语动词,snowy为形容词,snowing为现在分词,所以只有snows是正确的,意思是"冬天有时候下雪"。
3. C 4. B 5. C

四、1. C 2. A 3. D 4. B

五、1. How does he go to the park?
2. Let me read the story for you.
3. Don't run or play on the ferry.
4. You must drive the sled slowly.
5. What will she do?

六、D B E F A C

七、1. B 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. E

八、1. C **方法点拨**:本题用**关键信息推断法**。即通过文中的关键信息来推断出生词的含义。通过阅读我们可以知道公共汽车上的人们看到mice都很讨厌,文章最后发现mice特别怕猫,所以应该为老鼠。
2. A 3. C 4. No 5. Yes 6. No

课时练6 Part C Story time

一、(一) 1. B 2. A
3. B **点拨**:可通过课文中的第一幅图中的背景观察出答案。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

4. B 5. A

（二）1. use chopsticks 2. drive on the left side

3. look left first and then right before crossing the road

（三）True: C D E False: A B

方法点拨:本题用基于常识判断法。A 选项意思为“在中国，驾驶员坐在车的右侧”，这与事实是相反的。B 选项同理。C 选项的意思是“在中国，人们在道路右侧行驶”，这与事实是相符的。D 选项说“在中国和英国都可以看到双层巴士”，这也是正确的。E 选项的意思是“在中国供乘客上车的门在车的右侧”，这与事实是相符的。

二、1. B 2. A 3. Yes

培优练 周末主题素养练（二）

听力材料：

一、1. This is my uncle. He is from Hong Kong. That is a big, beautiful city.

2. This is my aunt, Lucy. She is from Alaska. She lives near the sea.

3. That nice old man is my grandfather. He is from Munich. It's in Germany.

4. That tall, young man is my cousin. He is from Scotland.

5. Look at my friend, Sam. He is from London. It's a famous city.

二、1. Look at that sign. It means the car should wait for the people who are crossing the street.

2. Look at this. We can't turn left here.

3. I see that sign. It tells us bikes can't get in this road.

4. That sign means there is a school and that the cars should slow down.

5. This one means there is a crossing. We should pay attention.

三、1. Jenny, the light is yellow now. Let's run to cross the road.

2. Oh, look! The bus is coming. Let's get on the bus.

3. The ferry is so fast! I like it. I want to see the water of the river, Jenny.

四、We want to know more about the signs on the streets. So today we go around the city. We meet at a bus stop at 8: 00 in the morning. And we walk to the museum. On the way, we see many signs. We pay attention to the traffic lights. Then we go to the nature park by bus. That's interesting!

答案：

一、grandfather aunt cousin uncle friend

二、2 1 4 5 3

三、1. B 2. A 3. B

四、1. A 2. B 3. C

五、go; go; go; light; stop; stop; stop; go; go; go; yellow; slow; Stop; wait; go

六、1. Don't eat; drink 2. Don't talk

3. Don't play 4. Don't play

七、1. careful; different

2. B 3. B 4. No 5. Yes

八、范文

In China, we drive on the right side. When we see the red light, we must stop. We can go at the green light. We can ride a bike on the street when we are twelve years old. Pay attention to the traffic lights and signs. We must follow them.

九、1. —How do you go to Shanghai?

—I go to Shanghai by train.

2. —How do you go to Qingdao?

—I go to Qingdao by ship.

3. —How do you go to Guangzhou?

—I go to Guangzhou by plane.

Unit 3 My weekend plan

课时练 1 Part A Let's try ~ Let's talk

一、1. C 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. C

二、1. am 2. is 3. are 4. are

三、1. C

2. B **点拨**: art 是以元音音素开始的单词，所以其前面的不定冠词为 an。

3. A **点拨**: 横线前的 be 动词 is 与 going to make 构成一般将来时的结构。

4. B **点拨**: have to 为情态动词，意思是“不得不；必须”，与动词原形连用。

5. B

四、1. B **点拨**: 句中的男孩明显是准备去钓鱼，而不是正在钓鱼，所以选择一般将来时态。

2. A 3. B

五、1. (1) C (2) B (3) A

2. Yes 3. No

课时练 2 Part A Let's learn ~ Make a plan

一、1. morning 2. supermarket 3. evening

4. Tomorrow 5. tonight

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

二、1. C　**点拨**：由 tomorrow 可知句子为一般将来时，用“be going to ＋动词原形”，“看望”应为 visit。

2. A　**点拨**：want to 后接动词原形。

3. B　4. B

三、1. 　2. 　3. 　4. 

方法点拨：本题用**关键信息判断法**。即抓住图片与文中的关键信息进行判断。如第 1 小题，电影票上有很多信息，而句子中提供了时间和事件两大关键信息，事件是正确的，但时间明显不是晚上，所以是错误的。而第 3 小题中图片为购物清单，这是要去超市购物前的准备工作，所以是正确的。

四、1. What；am going；see a film

2. going；this；are；to take；trip

五、1. going；park；afternoon

2. going；see a film

3. Yes

培优练　周末主题素养练（一）

听力材料：

一、1. **Jenny**：I'm going to do my homework in the morning.

2. **Jenny**：I'm going to have a picnic at the park in the afternoon.

3. **Jenny**：I'm going to wash clothes in the afternoon.

4. **Jenny**：I'm going to draw a picture in the evening.

二、1. **Danny**：I'm going to have a big breakfast in the morning.

2. **Danny**：I'm going to have a swimming lesson in the afternoon.

3. **Danny**：In the evening，I'm going to see a film.

三、1. **Jenny**：Hi，Steven. What are you going to do this weekend?

Steven：I'm going to learn ice-skating with my brother.

2. **Jenny**：Tom，are you going to the bookstore?

Tom：Yes，I'm going to buy a book on Sunday morning.

四、My family will have a nice weekend. My grandparents are going to take a trip to the mountain this Sunday. They like the mountains very much. My father is going to teach an English lesson this Saturday. He is an English teacher. My mother is going to the supermarket in the morning. I'm going with her. My brother is going to see a film in the afternoon. We are going to have fun.

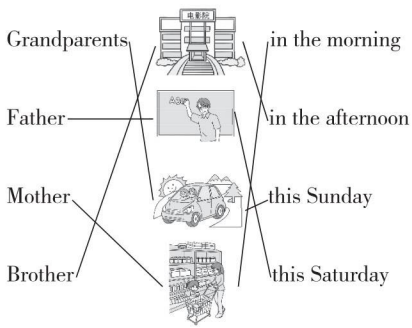
答案：

一、划掉第一行第一幅；第二行第一幅

二、2　3　1

三、1. C　2. A

四、



五、1. morning　2. supermarket

3. Next；visit　4. film；tonight

六、1. What are you going to do next Sunday?

2. Who are you going with?

3. Where are you going?

4. How are you going there?

5. When are you going?

七、1. winter holiday plan　2. Shanghai；China；work

3. B　4. B

八、范文

Dear Mum，

Hi，Mum. I know that you are going to China this winter holiday. And I'm going to stay home with my sister. I'm not very happy about this. But I'm going to take care of my sister and me. Aunt Susan is going to help us every morning. She can make breakfast and lunch for us. I'm going to clean our rooms and wash clothes with her. In the afternoon，I'm going to read books and watch TV with my sister. We will be OK. Wait for you!

Yours，

Jenny

九、1. —What are you going to do this Sunday?

—I'm going to read books.

2. —What are you going to do this Sunday?

—I'm going to clean my room.

3. —What are you going to do this Sunday?

—I'm going to do my homework.

课时练 3　Part B　Let's try ~ Let's talk

一、father　cinema　see　films

二、1. C　**点拨**：visit 为动词，它后面出现的人称代词应该使用宾格形式。

2. A　3. C

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

4. B　**方法点拨**:本题用**排除法**。即排除不正确或不符合要求的选项，得到正确答案的方法。如A选项放置到句子中去后，会发现少一个助动词do，而C选项放置到句子中去后，会发现少一个主语，所以只能选择B。

三、1. D　2. C　3. A　4. B

四、1. A　2. B　3. B　4. C

方法点拨:本题用**坐标定位法**。即通过横向+纵向的信息交叉点来定位、梳理信息，如横向信息where和纵向信息Tom，交叉点为park，所以我们得到了信息Tom is going to the park. 也就是第1小题的答案。

课时练4　Part B

Let's learn ~ Role-play

一、1. dictionary　2. comic　3. word　4. postcard

二、1. A

2. C　**点拨**：be going to是一般将来时的结构，又因I与am搭配使用。

3. C　4. C

三、1. C　2. A　3. A

四、1. (1) B　(2) D　(3) A　(4) C

方法点拨:本题用**语境判断法**。即根据上下文来判断答案。如第(2)小题后回应的句子内容为打算买铅笔，所以第(2)小题处的句子可能是问打算买什么或做什么，即D答案。

2. B　3. C

课时练5　Part B

Read and write ~ Let's wrap it up

一、1. mooncakes　2. poem　3. together

4. autumn　5. Festival

二、1. B　2. A

3. B　**点拨**：tell为动词，其后出现的人称代词应为宾格形式。something about... 意思为“关于……的事情”。

4. A　5. C

三、Spring Festival：A C E

Mid-Autumn Festival：A B G

Dragon Boat Festival：D F（也可以写上A）

四、1. A　2. A　3. B

五、1. Where are you；I am going

2. How are they；are going；bus

3. When are；going to；I am；on

4. What；she；is going；visit

六、1. am going to draw a picture

2. am going to look for

3. is going to see a film

4. going to do

5. going to buy some comic books

七、1. A　2. B　3. A　4. B

课时练6　Part C　Story time

一、(一) 2　4　3　1　5

(二) B　D　C　A

(三) 1. going to learn how to swim

2. on TV

3. swimming pool

4. Practise

5. learn；doing

二、1. B　2. B　3. B　4. Yes　5. No

培优练　周末主题素养练（二）

听力材料：

一、1. I'm going to buy some comic books.

2. I'm going to buy some mooncakes. They are sweet.

3. I'm going to buy some storybooks.

4. I'm going to buy some toys.

二、I'm going to do lots of things this winter holiday. I'm going to the bookstore to buy some books. I'm going to visit my grandparents and have a big dinner with them. I'm going to the cinema to see a film. I'm going to go swimming in the swimming pool. And I'm going to the supermarket to buy lots of things. I will have a happy winter holiday.

三、1. **Lynn**：I'm going to buy some comic books tomorrow.

2. **Lynn**：He is going to work on the computer.

3. **Jenny**：What is our brother going to buy?

四、**Jenny**：Let's look at my family's weekend plan. My father is going to wash his car in the morning. My mother is going to the supermarket in the evening. Bob is going to the park to play with his friends. Lynn and I are going to read a storybook together. That will be fun.

答案：

一、F　T　F　T　T　T

二、3　1　5　4　2

三、1. A　2. C　3. B

四、1. B　2. A　3. C

五、1. by plane；visit　2. buy

3. When；January

六、1. is going to；June 17

2. 19　3. Yes　4. No

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

七、范文

Dear Jenny,

How are you? I think your summer camp will be fun. I want to tell you about my summer plan. I will take a trip to Beijing. It's a great city. I will play with my friends. I will read some interesting books. I will have fun this summer. Have a happy summer holiday!

Yours,

Sam

八、Jenny is going to Qingdao with his father this summer holiday. They are going to swim in the sea. Jenny is going to play on the beach. Jenny's mother is going to Ottawa. She is going to visit her parents.

Recycle 1

阶段复习练 Units 1 ~ 3

一、who: where when what

be: am is are

behind: near next to beside

I: we they he

二、1. hospital 2. cinema 3. plane

4. bus 5. take a trip

三、1. B **点拨**:寻求别人帮助,应使用 sir,这是对男子的尊称,显得正式而礼貌。

2. B 3. A

4. C **方法点拨**:本题用**逆向推断+排除法**。先确定第二个空的内容,再去寻找合理的搭配。如第二空填 green,与之匹配的应为 stop,答案选项中没有。所以可确定第二空为 red,再结合交通规则,可知应选 C。

5. C

四、1. E 2. D 3. C 4. A 5. B

五、1. A; Where 2. C; When

3. B; What 4. A; How 5. C; How

方法点拨:本题用**逆向推断法**。即由答句推断问句。如第 1 小题中,B 选项与问句关系不大,可以直接排除,C 选项如是答句,则问句中缺少主语,所以回答应该是 A,因答句是描述位置的,可推断疑问词为 where。

六、1. Where is the park?

2. What are you going to do this afternoon?

3. Where are you going?

4. Don't go at the yellow light.

5. You must wear a life jacket. 或 Don't run on the ferry.

七、1. B 2. D 3. A 4. E 5. C

八、1. T 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. F

九、范文

Hello, I'm a boy, too. I'm 12 years old. I study in Hongxing School in Shanghai. My home is not near my school. I usually go to school by bus. Sometimes my father drives me to school. Tomorrow is Sunday. I'm going to a bookstore. I'm going to buy some books there. I like reading.

Unit 4 I have a pen pal

课时练 1 Part A Let's try ~ Let's talk

一、1. lives **点拨**:he 为第三人称单数形式,动词应加 s。

2. swimming

3. a story/stories

4. him **点拨**:teach 为动词,其后出现的人称代词为宾格形式。

5. hobbies **点拨**:与 are 搭配使用的应为复数形式。

二、1. B 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. C

三、1. A 2. A 3. A 4. A 5. A

四、1. playing the *pipa* 2. reading books

3. girl 4. sending emails to each other

5. short, brown hair 6. watching TV

课时练 2 Part A Let's learn ~ Do a survey

一、1. singing 2. dancing 3. playing football

4. doing kung fu 5. reading stories

二、1. B **点拨**:hobbies 为复数,应选用与复数匹配的 are。

2. B **方法点拨**:本题用**排除法**。like 后应接动名词,经观察可见 A 和 C 选项都为动词原形,不符合题意,正确答案为 B。

3. B 4. C

三、1. F He is my friend/ brother/Jack. (只要写明其身份即可,答案不唯一)

2. T

3. F I like drawing cartoons. **点拨**:询问的是"你"的爱好,回答的是"她"的爱好,不匹配。

四、1. drawing pictures; reading books

2. drawing pictures

3. watching TV; reading books; seeing a film

4. reading books; seeing a film

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

培优练　周末主题素养练（一）

听力材料：

一、1. I like reading stories in the evening.
2　I like singing songs on Wednesday.
3. I like going hiking with my friends on weekends.
4. I like playing football on Sundays.
5. I like drawing pictures in the park.

二、This is my father. He likes reading books. My mother likes going shopping. I like playing the guitar. My brother likes listening to music.

三、**Jenny**：Hi, Mum, look at this photo.
Mum：Who's this girl?
Jenny：She is my pen pal Linda.
Mum：Where is she from?
Jenny：She's from London.
Mum：What are her hobbies?
Jenny：We both like singing songs. And she also likes sports.
Mum：That's very good.

答案：

一、1. √　2. ×　3. ×　4. ×　5. ×

二、1. A　2. A　3. B　4. A

三、1. C　2. C　3. B

四、1. I like doing kung fu.
2. He likes playing football.
3. She likes reading stories and singing.
4. I'm going to teach my sister to dance.

五、1. likes playing　2. going　3. also likes
4. likes　5. dancing and singing　6. stories

六、1. Linda　2. B　3. Yes

七、范文

Dear Linda,

How are you? I'm Jenny. I'm twelve years old. There are five people in my family, my father, my mother, my brother, my sister and I. I like playing basketball and playing the guitar. I also like reading books and listening to music. I'm very happy to be your friend. Let's write emails to each other.

Write to me soon.

Yours,
Jenny

八、—What are Dongdong's hobbies?
—He likes reading and dancing.
—What is Li Mei's hobby?
—She likes singing.

课时练 3　Part B

Let's try ~ Let's talk

一、1. Yes　2. No　3. Yes　4. No

方法点拨：本题用**常识推断法**。此题考查对世界地理知识的了解，首先要判断城市与国家是否匹配，会发现第 2 小题中堪培拉并不在加拿大，所以第 2 小题应为 No。其次判断相关的动物或名胜是否在这个国家，会发现第 4 小题中的景色不是英国的。所以此题应为 No。

二、1. C　**点拨**：you 后出现的是 doing，为动词的现在分词形式，与 be 动词构成现在进行时态，此题应选 are。
2. A　**点拨**：email 为以元音音素开始的单词，不定冠词应用 an。
3. C　4. B
5. B　**点拨**：write...to...表示“给……写……”，为固定搭配。

三、1. D　2. A　3. B　4. C

四、1. 圈：男生、长城、写着数字十的蛋糕
2. He；playing football　3. He；can
4. He likes　5. He；make；friends

课时练 4　Part B

Let's learn ~ Listen, match and say

一、1. studies　2. cooks
3. goes hiking　4. puzzle

二、1. A　**点拨**：题干中 also 后有一个 be，说明填情态动词，与动词原形构成一般疑问句，故答案为 Can。
2. B　**点拨**：主语 you 为第二人称，其后为动词 live，句首应为助动词 do。
3. C　**点拨**：横线后为动词原形，isn't 不能与动词原形连用，可以排除。又因 my father 为第三人称单数，故用助动词的否定形式 doesn't。
4. C

三、1. Does；do word puzzles；No, she doesn't
2. Does；study Chinese；Yes, he does
3. Does；singing；No, she doesn't

四、1. Yes, he does
2. from the UK
3. likes playing football

课时练 5　Part B

Read and write ~ Let's wrap it up

一、1. A　2. A　3. A　4. B

二、1. A　2. C　3. B　4. B　5. C

三、1. watches　2. make；fly　3. goes　4. lives

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

5. go　**点拨**：句首有助动词 Does，句中的动词使用原形。

四、1. T　2. F　3. T　4. T　5. F

五、1. A　2. C　3. B　4. A

六、1. C　2. B　3. E　4. D　5. A

七、1. B　2. C　3. A

4. 划掉：第一、三、五幅图　5. Yes　6. Yes

课时练 6　Part C　Story time

一、(一) 1. C　2. A　3. B　4. C　5. A

点拨：此题考查了故事的主题、主要人物、发生的地点、主要人物之间的关系等主要信息，此外还考查了关键新词的意思。需要具备概括能力、快速阅读短文并梳理相关信息的能力以及通过信息进行推断的能力。

(二) 1. T　2. F　3. F

二、(一) 1. rabbit; tortoise

2. slowness but steadiness wins the race

(二) 1. B　2. C

培优练　周末主题素养练（二）

听力材料：

一、1. We like going hiking very much.

2. Peter often does word puzzles.

3. Jenny often cooks with her mother.

4. Peter makes noodles in the kitchen.

5. Jack likes playing football.

二、1. What is Peter's hobby?

2. Does Peter live in Australia?

3. What is Peter going to do?

三、Hi, kids. This is my new pen pal. His name is Peter. He is eleven years old. He is from New York. He studies Chinese in China now. He likes going hiking on Sundays. There are four people in his family. They like having fun together.

答案：

一、1. F　2. T　3. T　4. F　5. T

二、1. B　2. A　3. C

三、1. B　2. A　3. C　4. A

四、1. hiking　2. join　3. hobby　4. idea　5. goal

方法点拨：本题用**字谜三步法**。一看所给线索，二观察表格内的信息，包括已经给出的字母、一个单词的字母数量等；三要先写出特别有把握的单词，因为单词之间相互关联，有时写出两个单词后，其他单词的部分字母也就出现了，能够提示出正确答案。

五、1. She is Jenny's new pen pal.

2. She lives in London.

3. There are five people in her family.

4. Yes, she does.

5. She likes dancing and singing.

六、1. Linda　2. Ottawa; London

3. bike　4. Yes　5. C　6. B

七、范文

Dear Jenny,

How are you? I'd like to tell you something about my best friend today. His name is Tom. He is ten years old. He lives in Australia. He likes playing sports and singing. We often write emails to each other. I think you can be good friends, too.

Yours,

Danny

八、—Is he a boy? —Yes, he is.

—Where is he from? —He is from England.

—Does he have short hair? —Yes, he does.

—Does he wear glasses? —Yes, he does.

—Is he Tom? —Yes, he is.

Unit 5　What does he do?

课时练 1　Part A　Let's try ~ Let's talk

一、1. cleaner　2. singer　3. dancer

4. player　5. writer

二、1. singer　2. driver　3. player

4. writer　5. cleaner

三、1. B　**点拨**：所填单词应与 here 连用，表示“在这里”，所以应为 be 动词，又因 Li Lin 为第三人称单数，所以使用 is。

2. A　**点拨**：句子谓语动词为 do，所以空格处应为助动词，只有 A 选项符合要求。

3. C

四、3　1　4　2

五、1. teacher　2. Tony's brother; Tony

3. No　4. Yes

课时练 2　Part A

Let's learn ~ Listen, match and say

一、waitress　actress　postman　businessman　queen　princess

二、1. F　2. T　3. T

三、1. Is her aunt a police officer?

2. is his

3. No, she isn't.

4. What does she do?

四、圈出第一幅图、第二幅图、第三幅图、第五幅图

3　4　1　2

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 达标检测卷

时间：40 分钟　满分：100 分

	听力（30 分）				笔试（70 分）							总分
题　号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	
得　分												

第一部分　听力（30 分）

听力测试

一 听录音，判断以下图片是（T）否（F）与所听内容相符。（5 分）

1. （ F ）　2. （ F ）　3. （ T ）　4. （ F ）　5. （ T ）

二 听录音，按听到的内容为下列图片排序。（5 分）

（ A ）（ D ）（ C ）（ B ）（ E ）

三 听录音，选出正确的答句。（10 分）

（ C ）1. A. There is a new zoo.　B. Let's go to the park.
C. It's a library.

（ B ）2. A. It's a great park.　B. It's near Happy Library on the First Street.
C. You can play with your friends there.

（ A ）3. A. Turn left at the crossing.　B. It's in front of this school.
C. It's near.

（ B ）4. A. The park is far from here.　B. Yes, it is.
C. Yes, it's near.

（ C ）5. A. Turn left and you can see it.　B. My house is near my school.
C. Yes, there is.

四 根据所听内容选择正确的一项。（10 分）

（ A ）1. Where does he want to go?
A. He wants to go to a shop.　B. He wants to go to Dongfeng Street.
C. He wants to go to the hospital.

（ A ）2. What can he do?
A. He can buy some postcards at a shop.
B. He can go to a post office.
B. He can buy some postcards at the post office.

（ C ）3. Where is he now?
A. He is at the cinema.　B. He is at the big shop.
C. He is at the park.

（ A ）4. How can they get to the bookstore?
A. Turn left at the post office.　B. Turn right at the hospital.
C. In front of the hospital.

（ B ）5. What do they need to find the place?
A. A policeman.　B. A map or a GPS.　C. A teacher.

第二部分　笔试（70 分）

五 读一读，想一想，下列句子是读升调（↗）还是降调（↘）。（5 分）

1. There is a park near here. （ ↘ ）
2. Is there a nature park in your city? （ ↗ ）
3. Follow me, please. （ ↗ ）
4. How can I get there? （ ↘ ）
5. Is the zoo far from here? （ ↗ ）

六 读一读，根据图片提示写出词汇，补全句子。（10 分）

1. Excuse me, where is the ____hospital____?
2. There is a ____bookstore____ near our school. We can buy books there.
3. You can go ____straight____ first.
4. How can I get to the ____cinema____?
5. I want to go to the ____zoo____ ____park____.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

七 读一读，选一选。(10 分)

(A) 1. _____. Can you tell me the way to the shop?
A. I'm sorry　B. Excuse me　C. Man

(A) 2. You can turn right _____the zoo.
A. at　B. on　C. of

(A) 3. He wants _____some books and pens.
A. to buy　B. buy　C. buys

(C) 4. _____hot and sunny day!
A. How a　B. What　C. What a

(B) 5. How can they _____?
A. get to there　B. get there　C. there

(C) 6. Can you help _____the new school?
A. I find　B. me finding　C. me find

(A) 7. It's _____interesting book!
A. an　B. a　C. /

(B) 8. The restaurant is _____the Palace Museum.
A. next　B. next to　C. next from

(C) 9. Turn left, _____turn right _____the restaurant.
A. and; on　B. but; on　C. and then; at

(A) 10. Is London _____here?
A. far from　B. far　C. far to

八 读一读，选出与内容相符的图片。(10 分)

(C) 1. This is my classroom. There are some flowers near the door.
(D) 2. Welcome to my classroom. Look, the computer is next to the window.
(A) 3. The new cinema is near the museum.
(B) 4. Turn right and turn right again; you can see it.
(E) 5. There is a big shop over there.

A. 

B. 

C. 

D. 

E. 

九 读一读，选择正确的句子补全对话。(注意：有一项多余) (10 分)

A: Oh, no. 1. C I need to buy a new computer.
B: Let's go to the computer supermarket to buy one.
A: OK! 2. G
B: It's on Chuangye Street.
A: 3. B
B: No, it's not far. 4. A
A: 5. F
B: Go straight from our house, and then turn left at the park. You can see it on the left.

A. It's near Dongfeng Park.
B. My computer doesn't work.
C. Is it far?
D. Is it near?
E. Where is the computer supermarket?
F. How can we get there?

十 阅读短文，选择正确的答案。(15 分)

Today is Sunday. We go to a little town. It's a very beautiful town. We can see many interesting places there. Look, there is a map beside the street. Let's look at it. There is a plant museum in the middle. We can see trees, grass, flowers, vegetables and fruit there. What a fun museum! Near the museum, there is a supermarket. Oh, there is a flower hospital near the museum. That will be interesting. How can we get to the plant museum? Go straight and then turn right at Happy Shop. Then turn left at the Town Cinema. Let's go to see the plants!

(A) 1. In the town, we can see many _____.
A. boys and girls　B. interesting places　C. museums

(A) 2. The plant museum is in the middle. "Plant" means _____.
A. 
B. 
C. 

(C) 3. There is a _____near the museum.
A. map　B. Happy Shop　C. flower hospital

(A) 4. We think the plant museum is _____.
A. fun　B. old　C. beautiful

(C) 5. We should _____to get to the museum.
A. go straight, turn left and turn right
B. turn right and then turn left
C. go straight, turn right, and then turn left

十一 书面表达。(10 分)

迈克要去邮局寄一张明信片，请根据提示补全短文。(不少于 5 句话)

提示：从家出发，直行 10 分钟，在电影院左转，再直走，左手边看见一个博物馆，博物馆的旁边就是邮局。

Hi, I'm Mike. I want to go to the post office to send a postcard. I start from my house.

_____

_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 达标检测卷

时间：40 分钟　满分：100 分

题　号	听力（30 分）				笔试（70 分）							总分
	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	
得　分												

第一部分　听力（30 分）

听力测试

一 听录音，按听到的顺序为以下图片排序。（5 分）


（　）

（　）

（　）

（　）

（　）

二 听录音，判断以下图片是（T）否（F）与听到的内容相符。（5 分）


（　）

（　）

（　）

（　）

（　）

三 听对话，判断下列句子是（T）否（F）与对话内容相符。（10 分）

（　）1. The traffic light is red now. Please stop.
（　）2. He can ride a bike to the hospital.
（　）3. She often goes to work by subway.
（　）4. She goes to Qingdao by ship.
（　）5. He drives a car to school. He must drive slowly.

四 根据所听短文，填写字母，完成表格。（10 分）

				
Tom				
Jenny				
Danny				
Sam				
Lucy				

A = always　U = usually　S = sometimes　N = never

第二部分　笔试（70 分）

五 读一读，判断下列单词中画线部分的发音是（T）否（F）相同。（5 分）

（　）1. A. slow　　B. down　　C. yellow
（　）2. A. red　　B. ferry　　C. sled
（　）3. A. bike　　B. light　　C. this
（　）4. A. come　　B. must　　C. cousin
（　）5. A. can　　B. take　　C. traffic

六 读一读，根据图片提示写出单词，补全句子。（10 分）

1. 　2. 　3. 　4. 　5. 

1. We want to go to Shanghai by _____.
2. It's far from here. Let's take a _____.
3. Look, the _____ is coming!
4. Please _____ down.
5. I like to take a _____. It's fast and fun.

七 读一读，选一选。（10 分）

（　）1. He must _____attention _____the traffic lights.
A. pays; with　　B. pay; to　　C. paying; to

（　）2. In Hong Kong, people drive _____the _____side.
A. on; left　　B. on; right　　C. at; left

（　）3. Let's _____a bus _____.
A. take; home　　B. by; home　　C. take; to home

（　）4. Munich is a city in _____.
A. Alaska　　B. the UK　　C. Germany

（　）5. I often come to school by bike. _____I come _____foot.
A. Usually; on　　B. Sometimes; on　　C. Often; by

（　）6. _____the USA people _____bikes must wear a helmet.
A. In; on　　B. On; in　　C. In; by

（　）7. I usually _____. That's good exercise.
A. walk to school　　B. come to school by car
C. come to school with my mum

（　）8. You must _____at a _____light.
A. go; yellow　　B. go slowly; red　　C. stop; red

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

( ) 9. Look, it means _____.

A. you can go straight and turn left here

B. you can go straight and turn right here

C. you can't go straight or turn right here



( ) 10. How can we _____?

A. get to there B. get there C. get the hospital

八 按要求完成下列各题。(10 分)

1. Go at a red light. (改为否定句)

_____

2. He often gets there by subway. (对画线部分提问)

_____

3. He usually walks to the nature park. (写出同义句)

_____

4. Amy comes to school by bus. (改为一般疑问句)

_____

5. There are three traffic lights in every country. (对画线部分提问)

_____

九 读一读，选择正确的句子补全对话。(10 分)

John: Zhang Peng, let's go to the park tomorrow morning.

Zhang Peng: Great! 1. _____

John: It's easy. Come to my home by bike. 2. _____

Zhang Peng: OK! 3. _____

John: Do you know the post office near the hospital? 4. _____

Zhang Peng: I see. 5. _____

John: Yes! See you tomorrow.

Zhang Peng: Goodbye!

A. I think the bus stop is near your home. B. How can we get there?

C. Where is your home? D. Then we can go there by bus.

E. I live in the building in front of the post office.

十 阅读短文，完成任务。(15 分)

Different students like different ways to go to school. I like to go to school on foot. Because I live near school. It takes me only fifteen minutes to get to school. There are many cars and buses on the street. Riding a bike is not safe. Walking to school is good exercise. And I like to listen to music when I walk to school. That's fun. My friend Tom likes walking, too. But he doesn't go to school on foot. His home is far from our school. He often goes to school by bus. We often go for a walk together in a park on Saturday morning. That's good for our body.

(一) 根据短文内容，选择正确的一项。(10 分)

( ) 1. I like to go to school _____. My friend Tom often goes to school _____.

A. on foot; on foot B. by bus; on foot C. on foot; by bus

( ) 2. Which is true?

A. I like to walk to school because I live near school and walking is good exercise.

B. I like to go to school by bus because I live far from school.

C. Tom doesn't like walking.

( ) 3. Which is NOT true?

A. I walk for fifteen minutes to get to school.

B. Riding a bike is a safe way to school.

C. Tom doesn't walk to school.

( ) 4. We often _____together.

A. go to school on foot B. go to school by bus C. go for a walk in a park

( ) 5. Tom _____.

A. likes walking but can't walk to school

B. doesn't like walking but walks to school

C. likes walking and walks to school

(二) 根据短文内容判断正 (T) 误 (F)。(5 分)

( ) 1. Different students like different ways to school.

( ) 2. I like listening to music when I walk to school.

( ) 3. There are so many cars and buses on the street. I often take a bus to school.

( ) 4. Tom and I think walking is good for our body.

( ) 5. Tom and I walk together on Sunday morning.

十一 书面表达。(10 分)

你通常采用什么方式去上学，你的家人采用什么方式去上班呢？你最喜欢哪种方式呢？为什么？请介绍一下吧。注意：不要出现自己的真实姓名，不得少于 5 句话。

_____

_____

_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 达标检测卷

时间：40 分钟　满分：100 分

题号	听力（30 分）				笔试（70 分）							总分
	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	
得分												

第一部分　听力（30 分）

听力测试

一 听录音，选出与所听到的内容相符的一项。（5 分）

（ C ）1. A. this morning　　B. this afternoon　　C. this evening

（ A ）2. A. tomorrow　　B. tonight　　C. today

（ B ）3. A. 　　B. 　　C. 

（ A ）4. A. 　　B. 　　C. 

（ C ）5. A. 　　B. 　　C. 

二 听一听，判断以下句子与所听内容是（T）否（F）相符。（5 分）

（ F ）1. She is going to go to the cinema this evening.

（ T ）2. They are going to have a picnic at the nature park this Sunday.

（ T ）3. Her family will have a big dinner on Mid-Autumn Festival.

（ F ）4. She wants to buy lots of comic books.

（ T ）5. She wants to buy some fruit and vegetables at the big supermarket.

三 听一听，根据问句的顺序给答句排序。（10 分）

（ 2 ）We're going to the new science museum.

（ 5 ）Yes, I do.

（ 4 ）He's going tomorrow morning.

（ 1 ）She is going to buy some books.

（ 3 ）We are going by train.

四 听一听，根据所听短文的内容选择正确的一项。（10 分）

（ C ）1. It's _____ today.

A. Sunday　　B. Saturday　　C. Friday

（ C ）2. Lucy is going to _____ in the morning.

A. watch TV　　B. watch animals on the farm

C. watch animals at the zoo

（ C ）3. She wants to buy some _____ in the afternoon.

A. comic books　　B. picture books　　C. storybooks

（ B ）4. She is going to _____.

A. walk to her parents' home　　B. walk to her grandparents' home

C. walk to buy storybooks

（ A ）5. She will _____ this weekend.

A. be happy　　B. learn to swim　　C. go to school

第二部分　笔试（70 分）

五 读一读，选出能替换句子中画线单词的一项。（5 分）

（ C ）1. Can you go to the bookstore with me tomorrow?

A. afternoon　　B. today　　C. morning

（ B ）2. The mooncake is very nice.

A. sun　　B. moon　　C. cake

（ A ）3. He is going to write a poem for you.

A. story　　B. writer　　C. pear

（ A ）4. Will you have lessons this afternoon?

A. classes　　B. listen　　C. learn

（ C ）5. What is your favourite festival?

A. parents　　B. vegetables　　C. holiday

六 读一读，根据图片提示写出单词，补全句子。（10 分）

1. 　2. 

3. 　4. 

5. 

1. They will [ ] a [ ] to Shanghai this summer.
2. Let's go to the [ ] to buy some food.
3. This week we go to the park. Next week we are going to the [ ].
4. You need a [ ] to learn English.
5. People often send a [ ] to their family and friends on holidays.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

典中点 荣德基

七 读一读，选一选。(10 分)

(A) 1. We can go to the cinema to _____.
A. see a film　　B. visit our family　　C. listen to music

(B) 2. It's Monday. _____is Tuesday.
A. Today　　B. Tomorrow　　C. Tonight

(C) 3. My mother will _____a story about the Great Wall.
A. tells I　　B. tell I　　C. tell me

(A) 4. I _____going to play football with my friends.
A. am　　B. is　　C. are

(C) 5. When we buy something, we should know its _____.
A. home　　B. friend　　C. price

八 读一读，按要求完成下列句子。(10 分)

1. I go to school on foot every day. (用 tomorrow 替换 every day 改写句子)
_____

2. We are going to sing songs at the party next Friday. (用 now 替换 next Friday 改写句子)
_____

3. He is going to buy some pens. (对画线部分提问)
_____

4. She is going to read a book this evening. (改为否定句)
_____

5. My father is going to wash his car this afternoon. (对画线部分提问)
_____

九 读一读，选择正确的句子补全对话。(10 分)

A: 1. ___C___
B: I'm going to travel to Harbin with my family.
A: 2. ___E___
B: Because it's cool in Harbin.
A: Sounds great! 3. ___A___
B: We will take a train to Beijing.
Then we'll go there by plane.
A: 4. ___C___
B: We will visit my aunt and uncle.
And we will visit the interesting places there.
A: 5. ___B___
B: Thanks.

A. How will you go there?
B. Have a good trip!
C. What are you going to do this summer holiday?
D. What are you going to do there?
E. Why are you going there?

十 阅读短文，完成任务。(15 分)

Summer is coming. I'm excited. Because there is a long holiday in summer. It's the summer holiday. This summer holiday, I'm going to a summer camp. I will go with 19 other students on July 7. They will be from the cities around China. We will go hiking. We will go to a forest. We will learn about animals and plants in the forest. In the evening, we will make dinner together. After dinner, we will sit around the fire. We will sing songs and dance together. I want to make new friends there. I will have a great and interesting summer!

(一) 圈出短文中提到的活动图片。(5 分)



(二) 根据短文内容选择正确的一项。(10 分)

(B) 1. I'm excited because _____.
A. summer is hot　　B. I want to have the summer holiday
C. I want to go swimming in summer

(A) 2. The summer camp means _____.
A. 夏令营　　B. 冬令营　　C. 培训学校

(A) 3. There are _____students in the summer camp.
A. twenty　　B. nineteen　　C. twenty-one

(C) 4. The students are from _____.
A. different countries　　B. different cities in the world
C. different cities of China

(B) 5. I will feel _____.
A. happy　　B. tired　　C. sad

十一 书面表达。(10 分)

寒假 (winter holiday) 快要来了，你准备怎样度过这个寒假呢？请以 My Winter Holiday Plan 为题写一篇小短文来介绍一下吧。

要求：1. 注意时态，语句通顺，不少于 5 句话。
2. 短文中不得出现自己的真实姓名等信息。
3. 要给出健康、快乐、平安的活动方案。

_____
_____
_____
_____
_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

期中检测卷

时间：60 分钟　满分：100 分

	听力（30 分）				笔试（70 分）							总分
题　号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	
得　分												

第一部分　听力（30 分）

听力测试

一 听录音，判断下列图片与所听内容是（T）否（F）相符。（5 分）

1. （　）　2. （　）　3. （　）　4. （　）　5. （　）

二 听录音，根据所听内容为下列图片排序。（5 分）

（　）　（　）　（　）　（　）　（　）

三 听录音，将相关内容的序号写到人物下面的括号内。（10 分）

1. Jenny（　）　2. Danny（　）　3. Tom（　）　4. Jack（　）　5. Peter（　）

A. go to the zoo　B. go swimming　C. buy some books　D. go to the park　E. by bike
F. by subway　G. buy a dictionary　H. draw some pictures　I. play with her friends　J. on foot

四 听录音，根据所听内容选择正确的答案。（10 分）

（　）1. Tomorrow is _____.
A. Teachers' Day　B. Children's Day　C. Women's Day

（　）2. I'm going to _____ in the morning.
A. do my homework　B. do the housework　C. do the shopping

（　）3. I'm going to the _____ in the afternoon.
A. library　B. post office　C. bookstore

（　）4. I'm going there _____.
A. by bus　B. by bike　C. on foot

（　）5. Is it near my home?
A. Yes, it is.　B. No, it isn't.　C. We don't know.

第二部分　笔试（70 分）

五 读一读，猜一猜，写一写。把词汇写在横线上，图片的序号填入句前括号内。（10 分）

（　）1. I want to go to a place. We can see many robots there. It's great. It's a _____.

（　）2. My uncle goes to work on it. It's very fast. It looks like a bird. It's a _____.

（　）3. It's a place. There are lots of things. We go there to buy things. It's a _____.

（　）4. It's a place. When you are not well, you go there to see a doctor. It's a _____.

（　）5. We can take it on the river or the sea. It's big. It's a _____.

A.　B.　C.　D.　E.

六 读一读，用所给单词的正确形式填空。（10 分）

1. He _____ (visit) his uncle next week.
2. My mother tells _____ (we) a story about Mid-Autumn Festival.
3. Tom often _____ (draw) pictures every Sunday afternoon.
4. She must _____ (go) to school on foot today.
5. Please drive _____ (slow). Pay attention to the traffic lights.

七 读一读，选一选。（10 分）

（　）1. The post office is _____ the bookstore _____ Yonghua Street.
A. next to; on　B. far; to　C. near; to

（　）2. They have lots of _____.
A. picture　B. toy　C. comic books

（　）3. _____ interesting the film is!
A. What　B. What a　C. How

（　）4. You can turn right _____ the cinema. Then you can see it _____ your left.
A. at; on　B. on; at　C. at; at

（　）5. He usually _____ to the park _____ foot _____ Saturday afternoon.
A. go; on; on　B. goes; by; in　C. goes; on; on

（　）6. My family are going to have a big dinner together _____.
A. now　B. every day　C. next week

（　）7. Danny usually _____ the park on Sundays.
A. goes to　B. is going to　C. go to

（　）8. How can she _____ the post office _____ the park?
A. gets to; from　B. get to; from　C. gets; to

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

(B) 9. Why not _____ this evening?
A. to watch TV　　B. watch TV　　C. watches TV

(A) 10. These books are _____ animals. They are interesting.
A. about　　B. from　　C. at

八 读一读，根据答句选择正确的问句。(10 分)

(C) 1. We get there by subway.
A. What are you going to do?　　B. What do you want to do?
C. How do you get there?

(B) 2. Go straight and then turn right. You can see it.
A. Where are you going?　　B. How can I get there?
C. Where do you want to go?

(A) 3. I'm going to have an English lesson.
A. What are you going to do this afternoon?
B. What are you doing now?
C. What do you like to do?

(C) 4. He is going to Qingdao.
A. Excuse me, where is Qingdao?　　B. When is he going?
C. Where is he going this Sunday?

(B) 5. She is going there on January 23.
A. How will your father go to Beijing?　　B. When is your sister going to Canada?
C. Where is your mother going?

九 读一读，选择正确的句子补全对话。(10 分)

A: Hello, Lisa. 1. _____
B: I often come on foot.
A: 2. _____
B: No, he often goes by car.
A: 3. _____
B: She often goes by bus.
A: 4. _____
B: I'm going to have a picnic with my family.
A: 5. _____
B: In Renmin Park.
A: Have a good time!
B: Thanks.

A. Does your father often go to work on foot?
B. How do you come to school?
C. Where will you have the picnic?
D. What about your mother?
E. What are you going to do this Sunday?

十 阅读短文，选择正确的一项。(10 分)

Dear Oliver,

How are you? I'm fine in China. I'm going to tell you something about my life here. I study in Shanghai. I live near the school. So I can go to school on foot. But I often come by bike. I think it's fun and that's good exercise, too. My father works in a library here. I often read books in the library on Saturday afternoon. I have a new friend here. His name is Li Lei. He is in Beijing, now. I'm going to visit him next weekend. Beijing is a big city. There are many interesting places there. I will fly there. We are going to visit the Great Wall and the Palace Museum. They are old and great. What are you going to do next weekend?

Yours,
Jack

(C) 1. This letter is from _____ to _____.
A. Jack; Li Lei　　B. Jack; Oliver　　C. Oliver; Jack

(A) 2. Li Lei is in _____ now.
A. Beijing　　B. Shanghai　　C. the Great Wall

(B) 3. Jack often goes to school _____.
A. 　　B. 　　C. 

(C) 4. Jack will go to Beijing by _____ next weekend.
A. 　　B. 　　C. 

(B) 5. They won't go to _____.
A. 　　B. 　　C. 

十一 书面表达。(10 分)

请你替 Oliver 给 Jack 回一封信。具体内容参照下面的图片。

要求：1. 内容要包括以下图片但不限于这些图片，可适当加入自己的想象。
2. 请注意时态，语句通顺，书写规范。
3. 正文不少于 5 句话。






Dear Jack,
How are you? _____

Yours,
Oliver

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 4 达标检测卷

时间：40 分钟　满分：100 分

题号	听力（30 分）				笔试（70 分）							总分
	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	
得分												

第一部分　听力（30 分）

听力测试

一 听录音，判断下列图片与所听内容是（T）否（F）相符。（5 分）

1. （ F ）　2. （ T ）　3. （ F ）　4. （ T ）　5. （ F ）

二 听录音，给下面图片排序。（5 分）

（ 3 ）　（ 4 ）　（ 1 ）　（ 2 ）　（ 5 ）

三 听一听，将人物与活动连线。（10 分）

1. Jenny　2. Lynn　3. Sam　4. Linda　5. Tom

A　B　C　D　E

四 听一听，根据所听短文的内容选择正确的一项。（10 分）

（ B ）1. What's my pen pal's name?
A. Wu Bing.　B. John.　C. Peter.

（ A ）2. What's my pen pal like?
A. Tall and strong.　B. Short and strong.　C. Tall and thin.

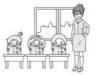
（ A ）3. What are my pen pal's hobbies?
A. Playing sports and watching TV.　B. Taking a trip.　C. Studying English.

（ C ）4. How does my pen pal go to school?
A. By bike.　B. On foot.　C. By bus.

（ B ）5. What do we often do?
A. Read books.　B. Write emails.　C. Play together.

第二部分　笔试（70 分）

五 读一读，根据图片提示写出或选出符合句意的单词，补全句子。（10 分）



1. Peter ___lives___ Chinese in Guangzhou.



2. My brother ___likes___ word ___puzzles___ every day.



3. My family ___goes___ ___hiking___ every weekend.



4. ___Canberra___ (Canberra　Ottawa) is the capital city of Australia.



5. After school, students will go to different ___places___ (bookshops　clubs).

六 读一读，选一选。（10 分）

（ C ）1. I like _____.
A. playing the football　B. play football　C. playing football

（ A ）2. My brother _____ piano.
A. likes playing the　B. like playing the　C. likes playing

（ B ）3. What _____ his hobby?
A. are　B. is　C. am

（ A ）4. It's a kind of flower. It's white and small. It smells great. It's a _____.
A. leaf　B. jasmine　C. root

（ A ）5. _____! Let's try it!
A. Good idea　B. Good think　C. Good listening

（ C ）6. My grandfather _____ in Beijing.
A. don't lives　B. doesn't lives　C. doesn't live

（ B ）7. Mrs. Green _____ English.
A. teach us　B. teaches us　C. teaches we

（ C ）8. Linda _____ long hair.
A. does　B. have　C. has

（ A ）9. I like apples. I _____ like oranges.
A. too　B. also　C. and

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

学号　姓名　班级　学校　密　线

(C) 10. I like tea _____.

A. lots of　　B. a lot of　　C. a lot

七 读一读，为下列句子选择正确的图片。(10 分)

(C) 1. My aunt lives on the farm. She often sings songs to the cows.

(A) 2. They like chatting about interesting films.

(D) 3. Li Jun often does the dishes after dinner.

(B) 4. The children like reading books together.

(E) 5. This is a dance class. You can dance with your partner.

A. 　B. 　C. 　D. 　E. 

八 读一读，按要求完成下列句子。(10 分)

1. Every afternoon I study Chinese and do my homework. (用 she 替换 I 改写句子)

Every afternoon she studies Chinese and does her homework.

2. Lucy loves to play with her cat. (改为一般疑问句)

Does Lucy love to play with her cat?

3. My grandma has some nice cake. (改为否定句)

My grandma doesn't have some nice cake.

4. I like playing ping-pong and running. (对画线部分提问)

What do you like doing?

5. Does your pen pal live in Shanghai? (给出否定回答)

No, he doesn't.

九 读一读，选择正确的句子补全对话。(10 分)

A: Come on, Susan. Look at my photos.

B: They are great! 1. D

A: He's my new pen pal.

B: 2. A

A: China.

B: 3. E China is a great country.

A: Yes. 4. B

B: Can I go with you?

A: 5. C Why not?

B: Great! I'm excited.

A. Where is he from?
B. Who is this boy?
C. Good idea!
D. I will go to China to visit him.
E. Really?

十 阅读短文，完成任务。(10 分)

Chen Jie is very happy to have two new pen pals. They are Jim and Kim. Jim and Kim live in the USA, but they live in different cities. Jim is short, but Kim is tall. Jim likes playing basketball. Kim likes playing basketball, too. Jim often plays basketball after school. Kim often plays basketball at a gym on weekends. Jim likes singing, but Kim likes drawing. They both like writing emails to Chen Jie. Chen Jie teaches them Chinese. They teach Chen Jie English. Chen Jie often tells them about the interesting places in China. They like China very much. They want to come to China one day.

(一) 阅读短文，完成表格。(5 分)

Jim	Jim and Kim	Kim
short	playing basketball	1. tall
2. likes singing	writing emails to Chen Jie	3. likes drawing
4. teaches Chinese		5. teaches English

(二) 根据短文内容判断正 (T) 误 (F)。(5 分)

(T) 1. Jim and Kim are from the USA.

(F) 2. Jim and Kim live in the same city.

(T) 3. Chen Jie writes emails to Jim and Kim to learn English.

(F) 4. Kim and Jim can teach Chen Jie Chinese.

(T) 5. Kim and Jim want to come to China.

十一 书面表达。(10 分)

陈洁经常给她的笔友写信来介绍中国的情况。请你替陈洁给她的笔友写一封信，可以简单介绍自己及家人的爱好，然后介绍一处具有中国特色的景点。

要求：1. 信的开头和结尾已给出，正文不少于 5 句话。

2. 家人的情况可参考自己的家庭情况来介绍，但不得出现真实的姓名。

3. 表达要通顺，书写要规范。

Dear Kim,

How are you? I'd like to tell something about my family. My family is not very big. There are only three people in my family. They are my father, my mother and me. My father is a doctor. He likes playing basketball. My mother is a teacher. She likes singing. I like drawing. I like China very much. I want to go to the Great Wall. It's very beautiful.

Yours,

Chen Jie

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 5 达标检测卷

时间：40 分钟　满分：100 分

	听力（30 分）				笔试（70 分）							总分
题　号	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	
得　分												

第一部分　听力（30 分）

听力测试

一 听录音，选出与所听内容相符的图片。（5 分）

（ A ）1. A. 　B. 　C. 

（ C ）2. A. 　B. 　C. 

（ A ）3. A. 　B. 　C. 

（ B ）4. A. 　B. 　C. 

（ C ）5. A. 　B. 　C. 

二 听一听，判断以下图片是（T）否（F）与所听内容相符。（5 分）

1. （ T ）
2. （ F ）
3. （ T ）
4. （ T ）
5. （ F ）

三 听一听，为所听问句选择恰当的答语。（10 分）

（ C ）1. A. She is five years old.　B. She is tall and thin.　C. She is a pupil.

（ A ）2. A. He is a driver.　B. He works at a shop.　C. She is a cleaner.

（ B ）3. A. She likes singing.　B. She goes by bus.　C. She is a head teacher.

（ C ）4. A. He is a football player.　B. He is good at football.　C. He wants to be a PE teacher.

（ B ）5. A. She works hard.　B. She works at a university.　C. She is a dancer.

四 听一听，根据短文内容判断正（T）误（F）。（10 分）

（ F ）1. My name is Li Mei.

（ T ）2. Li Mei's family is from China.

（ T ）3. Li Mei's mother is a doctor.

（ F ）4. Her father goes to work by bus.

（ T ）5. Li Mei's family likes going boating and drawing pictures.

第二部分　笔试（70 分）

五 读一读，选出与句中画线词汇同类的一项。（10 分）

（ C ）1. My mother is a head teacher.　A. work　B. office　C. player

（ A ）2. His uncle is tall and strong.　A. nice　B. coach　C. bus

（ B ）3. Amy's father goes to work by taxi.　A. grandpa　B. train　C. officer

（ C ）4. My brother has a healthy life.　A. scientist　B. gym　C. aunt

（ B ）5. They work at a big factory.　A. plane　B. hospital　C. healthy

六 读一读，根据图片猜一猜职业名称，写一写。（10 分）

1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 

1. She can fly in the sky on a plane. She is a pilot.
2. He works near the sea or a river. He can get fish every day. He is a fisherman.
3. He works at a gym. He trains the players. He is a coach.
4. He catches the bad men. He is a police officer.
5. He buys and sells. He is a businessman.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

七 读一读，选一选。(10 分)

(A) 1. This is _____university.
A. a　　B. an　　C. to

(C) 2. That strong man works _____.
A. the sea　　B. in the sea　　C. at sea

(B) 3. She will _____there today.
A. is　　B. be　　C. are

(A) 4. _____your mother a nurse?
A. Does　　B. Is　　C. Can

(C) 5. That scientist works _____that great university.
A. on　　B. with　　C. at

八 读一读，判断以下句子是 (T) 否 (F) 与图片相符。(10 分)

(T) 1. He is a postman. He goes to work by bike.
(F) 2. Jack studies very hard. He wants to be a scientist.
(T) 3. His uncle is a worker.
(T) 4. He works on a big farm. He is a farmer.
(F) 5. Lily often plays sports. She can be a PE teacher.

1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 
5. 

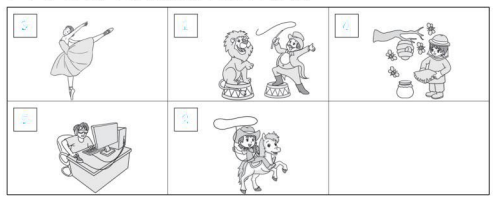
九 读一读，按要求完成下列句子。(10 分)

1. What's your mother's job? (写出意思相同的句子)
What does your mother do?
2. Amy's sister wants to be a singer. (对画线部分提问)
What does Amy's sister want to be?
3. Susan often goes to work by bike. (对画线部分提问)
How does Susan often go to work?
4. Her grandmother is a teacher. (改为一般疑问句)
Is her grandmother a teacher?
5. My uncle works at a big shop. (对画线部分提问)
Where does your uncle work?

十 阅读下列绘本，完成任务。(10 分)

1. If you are an astronaut, you should take care of animals. You should love animals. You should understand animals. You should make friends with animals.
2. If you are a cowboy, you should ride a horse well. You have a cow boy hat. You should help the horses and cows find nice grass.
3. If you are a dancer, you should love dancing. You must dance on your toes. You will wear beautiful dresses to dance.
4. If you are a bee farmer, you should wear a special hat. Be careful! Don't get stung. You can get sweet honey.
5. If you are a computer game tester, you should play computer games very well. You can work at home. You have to work on the computer for a long time.

(一) 将句子的序号写入正确的绘本图片下。(5 分)



(二) 根据绘本内容猜出职业，将下列的职业名称词汇写在正确的横线上。(5 分)

A. cowboy　　B. animal tamer　　C. computer game tester
D. bee farmer　　E. ballerina

十一 书面表达。(10 分)

你将来想从事什么职业呢？为什么？你的家人或朋友的职业是什么？他们想从事哪种职业呢？请介绍一下吧。

要求：1. 不少于 5 句话。
2. 不得在短文中出现真实的姓名。
3. 表达要通顺，书写要规范。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 6 达标检测卷

时间：40 分钟　满分：100 分

题　号	听力（30 分）				笔试（70 分）								总分
	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	十二	
得　分													

第一部分　听力（30 分）

听力测试

一 听录音，选出你听到的一项。（5 分）

（　）1. A. mice　　B. rice　　C. nice
（　）2. A. grass　　B. glass　　C. fast
（　）3. A. very　　B. worry　　C. well
（　）4. A. bed　　B. bag　　C. bad
（　）5. A. could　　B. should　　C. shall

二 听一听，判断以下图片是（T）否（F）与所听内容相符。（5 分）

1.（　）　2.（　）　3.（　）　4.（　）　5.（　）

三 听一听，选择正确的答句。（10 分）

（　）1. A. It's about some bad men.　　B. Its name is *Big Hero*.
（　）2. A. Because he got lots of gifts.　　B. Because he is ill.
（　）3. A. I feel happy.　　B. He feels happy.
（　）4. A. It doesn't work.　　B. I hurt my leg.
（　）5. A. He should take a deep breath.　　B. He should wear warm clothes.

四 听一听，根据短文内容选择正确的一项。（10 分）

（　）1. What's the story about?
A. It's about a mouse.　　B. It's about a cat.　　C. It's about a duck.
（　）2. Where does he live?
A. In a zoo.　　B. On a farm.　　C. At home.
（　）3. What colour is he?
A. He is yellow.　　B. He is white.　　C. He is gray.
（　）4. Why is he sad?
A. Because no one likes him.
B. Because he doesn't have a mother.
C. Because he wants to be beautiful.

（　）5. Why is he happy?
A. Because he finds his friends.
B. Because the birds will play with him.
C. Because he knows that he will be beautiful like the birds one day.

第二部分　笔试（70 分）

五 读一读，选出与句中画线单词意思相反的一项。（5 分）

（　）1. You bad wolf! Go away!
A. very　　B. good　　C. small
（　）2. What a hot, sunny day!
A. cold　　B. warm　　C. cool
（　）3. Please sit down.
A. stand　　B. up　　C. out
（　）4. The baby is so sad now.
A. bad　　B. fine　　C. happy
（　）5. It takes a long time to grow.
A. short　　B. old　　C. tall

六 读一读，根据图片提示，写出单词，补全句子。（10 分）

1. Don't be _____. Take a _____ _____ please.
2. Oh, you should _____ a _____.
3. Don't be _____. It can't hurt you.
4. Can you _____ _____ _____?
5. Don't be _____ about me. I can do it!

七 读一读，选一选。（10 分）

（　）1. Everyone _____ happy at the party.
A. am　　B. is　　C. are
（　）2. Look at these bad _____.
A. mice　　B. mouse　　C. mouths
（　）3. How _____ the book _____ you _____?
A. do; make; feel　　B. does; makes; feel　　C. does; make; feel

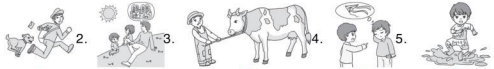
关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

学号　姓名　班级　学校　密　封　线
典中点 六年级英语上（PEP版）

(A) 4. _____! What can you _____?
A. Listen; hear B. Listen; listen C. Hear; listen

(A) 5. Your brother should _____hard at school.
A. studies B. study C. studying

八 读一读，为下列图片选择正确的描述。(5 分)



1. (E) 2. (A) 3. (B) 4. (D) 5. (C)

A. They are sitting on the grass and listening to a story.
B. Don't be sad. I can help you.
C. The dog is chasing a postman. Poor man! Be careful!
D. Don't play in the mud. Your clothes will be dirty!
E. My grandpa is pulling a cow.

九 读一读，按要求完成下列句子。(10 分)

1. It's cold and snowy today. (对画线部分提问)
What's the weather like today?

2. I feel very cold now. (对画线部分提问)
How do you feel now?

3. Sit down, please. (改为否定句)
Don't sit down, please.

4. He is often ill. (给出合理建议)
He should take more exercise.

5. should Linda this see morning a doctor (.) (连词成句)
Linda should see a doctor this morning.

十 读一读，选择正确的句子补全对话。(10 分)

A: Hello, this is John. 1. B
B: This is Jack.
A: I can't go to the park with you today.
B: 2. A
A: I hurt my foot.
B: Oh, no! I'm sorry to hear that. 3. D
A: I fell from my bike.
B: 4. E
A: My mother will take me to the hospital.
B: 5. C
A: Thank you.

A. What's wrong?
B. May I speak to Jack?
C. Be better soon!
D. What happened to your foot?
E. Do you see a doctor?

十一 阅读故事，完成任务。(10 分)

Today is Dick's birthday. Every year, he can get a gift from his father. And what is the gift this year? He is excited to see it. In the morning, he looks at his father after breakfast, but his father doesn't say anything. He is a little sad. Maybe the gift will come at lunch, he thinks. They have a big cake for lunch. But Dick isn't happy. Where is his gift? His father looks a little worried, but he says nothing again. In the evening, the gift doesn't come. Dick is very sad. He sits in his room. He doesn't want to talk with his father and mother. Then, he hears something! What is it? He stands up and looks out of the window. There is a little dog! Wow! It's so cute. He goes out of his room. The dog runs to him with a card on its back. It reads: Happy birthday!

(B) 1. The title (题目) should be _____.
A. Dick B. Dick's birthday gift C. A happy weekend

(A) 2. Dick can to get his gift from _____every year.
A. his father B. his teacher C. his doctor

(C) 3. In the morning, he _____. He feels _____.
A. gets his gift; happy B. doesn't get his gift; very sad
C. doesn't get his gift; a little sad

(A) 4. Dick feels _____in the evening.
A. happy B. very sad C. worried

(C) 5. How does Dick feel in the end (最终)?
A. He feels sad! B. He feels angry! C. He feels excited!

6. Dick gets a gift on his birthday every year. But he doesn't get a gift this year. Yes No √
7. Dick has a big cake for lunch, and he feels happy. Yes √ No
8. After lunch, Dick's gift doesn't come. His father is worried. Yes √ No
9. Dick doesn't like the little dog. Yes No √
10. The little dog is Dick's birthday gift. Yes √ No

十二 书面表达。(10 分)

我是小小故事王。请利用下面的故事开头，展开合理想象，写一段小故事。注意：故事不得少于 6 句话，要写出故事中人物的情绪变化，想象要合理，语句要流畅，书写要规范。

It's Sunday morning. The weather is nice. Tom, John, Peter and Tom's dog, Dogie go to the park to play football. They [illegible]

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

期末检测卷

时间：60 分钟　满分：100 分

题号	听力（30 分）				笔试（70 分）								总分
	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	十二	
得分													

第一部分　听力（30 分）

听力测试

一 听录音，选出你所听到的单词。（5 分）

（　）1. A. feature　　B. ferry　　C. feel

（　）2. A. should　　B. shall　　C. share

（　）3. A. tomorrow　　B. tonight　　C. today

（　）4. A. turn　　B. tell　　C. together

（　）5. A. sea　　B. stay　　C. street

二 听录音，根据所听内容给下列图片排序。（5 分）


（　）

（　）

（　）

（　）

（　）

三 听录音，根据所听内容选择适当的答句。（10 分）

（　）1. A. It's next to the restaurant on Xinghua Street.
B. Turn right at the traffic lights.
C. It's far from here.

（　）2. A. I often go there by bus.　　B. I'm reading a book.
C. I'm going to take a trip.

（　）3. A. He usually does word puzzles.　　B. He likes going swimming.
C. He goes to work by car.

（　）4. A. She works at a factory.　　B. She is a postwoman.
C. She walks to work.

（　）5. A. Let's go.　　B. I don't feel well. I'm ill.
C. Please take a deep breath.

四 听录音，根据所听内容在表格正确位置填写单词或短语。（10 分）

	What	Where	How	Hobbies
Linda	student	school	1. by [redacted]	drawing pictures
Father	2. [redacted]	gym	3. by [redacted]	4. [redacted]
Mother	5. [redacted]	6. [redacted]	7. by [redacted]	watching TV
brother	8. [redacted]	office	9. by [redacted]	10. [redacted]

第二部分　笔试（70 分）

五 读一读，将下列单词填入正确的类别中。（5 分）

museum　hot　train　evening　bike　businessman　park　morning　happy　fisherman

1. There is a restaurant near my home.　2. Do you often go to school by bus?

[redacted]　[redacted]

3. Tom wants to be a sports player.　4. We're going to have a big family dinner tonight.

[redacted]　[redacted]

5. I feel very warm now.

[redacted]

六 读一读，猜一猜，写出单词，并匹配恰当的图片。（10 分）

A.

B.

C.

D.

E.


（　）1. We can see a film in it. It's a [redacted].

（　）2. It goes under the ground. It looks like a train. It's the [redacted].

（　）3. We send it to our family or friends on a holiday. It's a [redacted].

（　）4. He always helps the people who need help. He catches bad men. He is a [redacted].

（　）5. He can drive a plane. He is a [redacted].

七 读一读，选一选。（5 分）

（　）1. Is there a library near here?
A. OK. Let's go.　　B. Yes, there is.　　C. It's next to the bookstore.

（　）2. What are you going to do _____ this weekend?
A. /　　B. on　　C. at

（　）3. You can _____ to the new nature park.
A. by No. 15 bus　　B. take the No. 15 bus　　C. by bus

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

典中点 六年级英语上（PEP版）　学校　班级　姓名　学号　密　封　线

(C) 4. John likes _____TV, but he must _____his homework first.
A. watch; do　　B. watching; doing　　C. watching; do
(A) 5. Don't _____angry _____the little baby. He is too young.
A. be; with　　B. are; with　　C. be; of

八 读一读，判断下列句子与图片是（T）否（F）相符。(10 分)







1. (F)　2. (T)　3. (T)　4. (F)　5. (F)

1. We go straight and then turn left at the crossing. We can get there.
2. It's red. Let's slow down. Then stop and wait.
3. Dick often goes to the bookstore to buy a comic book.
4. They don't like playing sports. They should do more exercise.
5. This is our coach. He is very strict.

九 读一读，按要求完成下列句子。(10 分)

1. —Where is the post office? (根据答句补全问句)
—The museum is beside the post office.
2. You can get to Tianjin by ship. (对画线部分提问)
How can you get to Tianjin?
3. His uncle often takes a trip on Sundays. (将 on Sundays 改为 next Sunday)
His uncle often takes a trip next Sunday.
4. I study English on Saturday morning. (将 I 改为 He)
He studies English on Saturday morning.
5. we pay must to lights attention the traffic (.) (连词成句)
We must pay attention to the traffic lights.

十 读一读，选择正确的句子补全对话。(10 分)

A: Hi, Linda. Nice to meet you. 1. D
B: I'm going to the new science museum.
A: 2. E
B: Yes. So I go there on foot. 3. A
A: I'm going to buy a book in the bookstore.
B: That's good. 4. B
A: I will write an email to my pen pal.
B: 5. C
A: He lives in Wuhan, China.
B: That is a great city!
A: Yes.

A. What are you going to do this afternoon?
B. Where are you going?
C. Where does your pen pal live?
D. Is it near here?
E. What are you going to buy?

十一 阅读短文，完成任务。(10 分)

Hello, I'm Rose. It's Friday evening. On Friday evening , I usually play the piano. My father likes reading books. My mother often cleans the rooms. But today my mother is not cleaning the rooms. She is in bed. She is not well. She is ill. So my father must do the housework. He is doing the dishes now. What am I doing? I'm cleaning the rooms. Tomorrow, we will take my mother to see a doctor. She will be better soon. Then on Sunday, we are going to visit my grandparents. Have a good rest, Mum. I wish you can be well soon.

(一) 回答下列问题。

1. What does Rose usually do on Friday evening?
She usually plays the piano.
2. What is her father's hobby?
He likes reading books.
3. What is Rose doing now?
She is cleaning the rooms.

(二) 根据短文判断下列句子正误在“Yes”或“No”上打“√”。

4. Rose's mother often reads books on Friday evening.　(Yes　No √)
5. Rose's family is going to visit her grandparents on Sunday.　(Yes √　No)

十二 书面表达。(10 分)

武汉有位九岁的女孩 Lily 想要交一个笔友。请你根据以下信息给她写一封电子邮件。

资料：你的名字叫 Lucy，是个女孩，住在香港。你经常乘坐公共汽车去上学。你喜欢画画、读书、唱歌。你知道武汉是个非常漂亮的城市，希望有一天，可以去拜访 Lily，跟她一起逛武汉。

要求：注意格式，语句通顺，书写规范，正文不少于 5 句话。

To: lily@ email. com
From: lucy @ email. com
Dear Lily,
How are you? I'm fine. I'm a girl. I live in Hong Kong. I live far from my school. I take a bus to school every day. I like painting, reading and singing. I know Wuhan is a beautiful city. I hope I can visit you one day. I can go to Wuhan with you.
Yours,
Lucy

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

培优练　周末主题素养练（一）

听力材料：

一、1. Here is a police officer.
2. His father is a worker.
3. Show me a cleaner.
4. Here comes a postman.
5. This is a basketball player.

二、Hello, I'm Jenny. This is my brother, Bob. He is a police officer. His friend Peter is a businessman. Julia is a dancer. She is Bob's friend, too.

三、**Mum**: Hi, Jenny. Can you help me clean the room? Someone will come to visit us.
Jenny: Sure. Who will come?
Mum: My friend, Peter.
Jenny: Is he a driver like you?
Mum: No. He is a writer.
Jenny: That's cool. I want to be a writer!

答案：

一、1. F　2. T　3. T　4. F　5. F

二、Bob：警察　Peter：商人　Julia：舞者

三、1. B　2. B　3. C

四、1. factory worker　2. businesswoman
3. postman　4. police officer

五、1. what does Bob do　2. is she a businesswoman
3. She is a teacher　4. Yes, he is

六、1. A **方法点拨**：本题用**排除法**。B 选项为女邮递员，我们知道其英语是 postwoman，不是 fireman。C 选项为工人，应为 worker。所以此处应选择 A。图片可提示我们这篇文章讲的是消防员。
2. C　3. B　4. B

七、范文

This is my family. My father is a pilot. He goes to work by car. My mother is a nurse. She works at a hospital. I'm a student. I'm ten. Let's be good friends.

八、1. —What does she do?
—She is a teacher.
2. —Is he a worker? —No, he isn't.
3. —Is she a singer? —Yes, she is.

课时练 3　Part B　Let's try ~ Let's talk

一、外貌：tall　short　big　thin
职业：fisherman　student　postman
交通工具：car　boat　bike　taxi　bus

二、1. B　2. A　3. A　4. B

三、1. B　2. C　3. A　4. B

四、1.（1）D　（2）B　（3）E　（4）C　（5）A
2. A　3. C

课时练 4　Part B

Let's learn ~ Write and discuss

一、1. hospital　2. doctor　3. sea
4. plane　5. university

二、1. fisherman　2. pilot　3. scientist　4. coach

三、1. What　2. Where　3. How
4. What

四、1. B　2. D　3. A　4. C

五、1. B　2. C　3. B　4. A

课时练 5　Part B

Read and write ~ Let's wrap it up

一、1. C　reporter　2. A　secretary
3. D　scientist　4. E　coach
5. B　pilot

二、1. be　**点拨**：can 后使用动词原形。
2. quickly　**点拨**：此处为副词，用来修饰动词 type。
3. wants；be　4. using　5. studies

三、1. C　2. A　3. C　4. B
5. B　**点拨**：此处 like 为介词，表示像……一样。

四、1. D　2. A　3. E　4. C　5. B

五、1. does；like　2. does；go to
3. does；want to be　4. Where；work
5. What；going to be

六、1. He is a pilot.
2. He works on a rescue plane.
3. He can drive a plane.
4. He goes to work by car.

七、1. B
2. 飞行员（8）　护士（2）　厨师（7）
老师（6）　医生（1）　司机（4）
清洁工（3）　农民（5）
3. B　4. A

课时练 6　Part C　Story time

一、1. unusual jobs
2. 圈出：养蜂人；魔术师助理；驯兽师；游戏测试员
（2）（4）（1）（3）

二、1. I will get stung.
2. I like to study. I don't like computer games.
3. I don't like that.
4. It's too dangerous.

三、1. A　2. B　3. A

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

培优练　周末主题素养练（二）

听力材料：

一、1. I know a reporter works at a TV station.
2. A pilot can drive a plane.
3. A secretary should help the boss.
4. A scientist is very cool.
5. A coach trains the players.

二、1. He always plays computer games. He tests them.
2. There is lots of water in it.
3. She works at a university. She researches wonderful things.
4. He works at the TV station. He tells us the news.
5. You can ride it. It's slow. But it's a healthy way.

三、Let's see my uncle's family. My uncle is a worker. He works at a factory. He goes to work by bike. He likes reading. My aunt is a teacher. She works at a school. She goes to work by car. She likes reading, too. My cousin Jane and Jack are students. They study at the same school. Their mother drives them to school. Jane likes singing and Jack likes playing sports.

答案：

一、3　1　5　2　4

二、1. B　2. B　3. A　4. A　5. B

三、

	job	where	how	hobby
uncle	worker	factory	bike	reading
aunt	teacher	school	car	reading
Jane	student	school	car	singing
Jack	student	school	car	playing sports

四、1. B　2. A　3. B　4. C

五、1. She is twelve years old.
2. She is from Shenzhen, China.
3. She likes singing, dancing, reading, riding a bike to school and talking with friends.
4. No. Because she is not good at math.

六、范文

I want to be a teacher. Because my teacher is very nice. She teaches us lots of things. I want to be a teacher like her. So I should study hard and learn more things for this.

七、略。

Unit 6　How do you feel?

课时练 1　Part A　Let's try ~ Let's talk

一、1. happy　2. afraid　3. angry　4. excited
5. shy

二、1. B　2. B

三、1. B　2. C　3. A　4. B

四、1. Where are they?　**点拨**：对 at school 提问，即不知道人物所在的位置，要用 where 提问。
2. What will they do?　3. Why does
4. Maybe our cat is chasing a mouse now
5. Why is the cat angry with the mice

五、1. 开心、生气、担心、开心
2. Yes　3. Yes

课时练 2　Part A　Let's learn ~ Write and say

一、1. is；am　2. is　3. are　4. be
5. be　6. are

方法点拨：本题用歌谣记忆法。I 后 am，you 后 are，is 跟着他（he），她（she），它（it）。单数 is，复数 are。to 后，情态（will，can）后用原形就是 be。

二、1. C　2. C　3. A　4. A

三、1. do；feel sad　2. sad；angry with
3. worried　4. happy　5. does；afraid

四、3　1　4　2

培优练　周末主题素养练（一）

听力材料：

一、1. I'm sad on Monday. Because I'm late.
2. Tom is angry.
3. I'm worried about my cat.
4. She is afraid of a long snake .
5. My sister is happy on Friday. Because Saturday is coming.

二、I read a book about bad animals today. We can see mice on the cover. It says that there are lots of mice in a little town. Mice often chase animals and people. They hurt people. Many people and animals are ill because of the mice. That's terrible!

三、**Tom**：Hello, Jenny.
Jenny：Hi, Tom. What are you doing?
Tom：I'm reading a book about vehicles.
Jenny：What are vehicles?
Tom：Cars, buses, taxis, trucks... They are vehicles.
Jenny：Oh, I see. Who writes this book?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Tom: A writer from the UK. We can know the names of the vehicles. And we can know how the cars and buses work from this book. It's interesting.

Jenny: I don't think so. I don't like vehicles.

Tom: Please read it. You will find how wonderful it is.

答案:

一、5 1 3 2 4

二、1. F 2. T 3. T

三、1. B 2. C 3. A

四、1. happy 2. angry 3. afraid; afraid 4. sad 5. worried

五、I'm sad; I'm sad I'm afraid; I'm afraid
I'm angry; I'm angry I'm worried; I'm worried

六、1. fox; crow

2. C **点拨**: 文章中提到 crow 有黑色的羽毛，只有 C 符合这一特征。

3. A 4. B 5. A

七、范文

Today is sunny. It's very warm. I feel very happy. In the afternoon, it's windy. I feel cold. And we can't play on the playground. We are sad. It's snowy in the evening. I like the snow. I'm so happy. But it's hard to walk home. I'm not so happy now.

八、1. Amy is happy. 2. Peter is sad.

3. Jack is angry.

课时练 3 Part B Let's try ~ Let's talk

一、圈 well，写 count 圈 should，写 well
圈 cats，写 should 圈 count，写 cats

二、1. C 2. C

3. A **点拨**: should 后跟动词原形。

4. A 5. A

三、1. B 2. D 3. C 4. A

四、1. D 2. A 3. C 4. B

课时练 4 Part B

Let's learn ~ Play card games

一、1. angry; take a deep breath; count to ten

2. cold; wear more warm clothes

3. do more exercise 4. ill; see a doctor

二、1. B 2. C 3. C 4. A

三、1. C **方法点拨**:本题用**综合信息推断法**。此处需要读完全文才能推断出答案。从后面的内容来看，A 这位同学主要是因为没办法帮助流浪猫才很难过，所以答案为 C。

2. C 3. A

课时练 5 Part B

Read and write ~ Let's wrap it up

一、1. A 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. A

二、1. bad 2. hungry 3. cold 4. ill

5. warm 6. sad

三、1. B

2. B **点拨**: let 作为动词，它之后出现的人称代词应使用宾格形式。

3. A

4. C **点拨**: don't 后应该使用动词的原形。worried 为形容词；worry 为动词。

四、2 4 1 3

(1) D (2) A (3) C (4) B

五、1. are playing 2. happy

3. are chasing **点拨**: 句首有 Now 指现在，一般和现在进行时态连用，指现在一些男孩正追着汤姆跑。

4. Help 5. afraid 6. pull 7. happy

六、1. B 2. A 3. D 4. E 5. C

七、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. Yes

课时练 6 Part C Story time

一、1. B 2. C 3. A

二、1. He will go and make some

2. be making lots of popcorn

3. No, he isn't

4. Angry

三、1. C **方法点拨**:本题用**类比推断法**。通过类比答案与短文中体现出来的关系从而获得答案。短文中，男孩不断向苹果树索取，而苹果树即使付出一切也很开心，只要男孩开心。这种关系像我们生活中父母和孩子的关系。父母总是为孩子付出一切而心甘情愿。

2. A 3. A

培优练 周末主题素养练 (二)

听力材料:

一、1. He is angry.

2. The ants pull Robin out of the mud.

3. I'm cold.

二、1. It's rainy on Sunday morning. Jenny is sad. She can't go to the zoo today.

2. Jenny wants to do her homework then. But she can't find her book. Where is her book? She looks for her book everywhere. She is worried.

3. Jenny finds her dog takes her book. She is very angry.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

4. Jenny shouts. She is afraid that her book will be broken.
5. Her dog puts her book on her desk, and then goes to take her pencil. The dog wants to help! Jenny is happy now.

三、**Jenny**: Hello. This is Jenny. May I speak to Linda.
Linda: This is Linda. Hello, Jenny.
Jenny: It's rainy today. We can't go to the zoo.
Linda: Yes! I feel so sad.
Jenny: What are you doing now?
Linda: I'm cleaning my bedroom.
Jenny: That's good. I'm doing my homework. My dog, Dig helps me put my book and pencil on the desk.
Linda: Wow, Dig is so cute. Can I go to see him this afternoon?
Jenny: Sure! That's great! We can play with him. I can't wait. I'm excited.
Linda: Me, too! Then see you at 3: 00 this afternoon.
Jenny: See you!

四、**Linda**: Hey, Jenny. Look at this picture. What happened?
Jenny: I went hiking with my family. I hurt my foot.
Linda: Oh, did you see a doctor?
Jenny: Yes, my father took me to a hospital near there. I felt better that evening.
Linda: Did you go home then?
Jenny: No, the next day we went to a zoo. We saw many animals. They were so cute.
Linda: You had a good time there, right?
Jenny: Yes! Look at this picture. Lynn saw a long snake. She was afraid.
Linda: Poor Lynn!

答案:

一、1. C 2. B 3. A
二、5 2 1 3 4
三、1. F 2. T 3. F
四、1. B 2. B 3. C
五、1. angry; take; deep breath; count; ten
2. sad; happy
3. cold; wear more; clothes
4. be afraid
六、1. sunny 2. worried 3. ask
4. sad 5. afraid
6. tell teachers about it (答案不唯一。)
七、1. Monday, March 2; Sunny 2. sad; sorry
3. take a deep breath; say something happy about their friends
4. have a club

八、范文

Some students are easy to be angry with their friends. When you are angry, you should take a deep breath and count to ten. Then you will be not so angry. Try to think of some happy things, and you will feel better. And you can talk to your friends. I think after talking, your friends will not make you angry again.

九、1. —Are you OK?
—No, I feel angry.
—You should take a deep breath.
2. —Are you OK?
—No, I feel cold.
—You should wear warm clothes.
3. —What's wrong?
—I am ill.
—You should see a doctor.

Recycle 2

阶段复习练 Units 4 ~ 6

一、1. A 2. A 3. B
二、1. D worker 2. C postman 3. A sad
4. E wear 5. B angry
三、1. C
2. B **方法点拨**:此题适用于**排除法**, 即先排除错误答案。My pen pal 为第三人称单数, A 选项中 like 没有加 s, 排除。like 后应加 doing, C 选项排除, 答案为 B。
3. C
4. B **点拨**: don't 后使用动词原形, be afraid of 为固定搭配。
5. A **点拨**: be angry with 为固定搭配。
四、3 1 2
五、1. C What is John's hobby
2. A What does your father do
3. B Where does your mother work
4. B How does Steven go to work
5. C What should she do
六、1. Danny likes singing songs and reading stories.
2. Does your grandfather live in Tianjin?
3. No, she doesn't.
七、1. B 2. E 3. D 4. C 5. A
八、1. happy 2. take; trip; Hong Kong
3. worried 4. Yes

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

九、Hello, I'm Lily. I'm eleven. I like doing sports and drawing cartoons. I want to be an art teacher. My father is a doctor. He likes helping people. He is great. My mother is a taxi driver. She is busy. What about your parents?

Unit 1 基础默写卡

Part A

一、1. science 2. museum 3. post office
4. bookstore 5. cinema 6. hospital
7. 问 8. 先生

二、1. science museum 2. next to 3. museum shop

三、1. Where is the museum shop?
2. It's near the door.
3. 多么伟大的博物馆啊！
4. 先生，打扰一下。

Part B

一、1. crossing 2. turn 3. left 4. straight
5. right 6. 有趣的 7. 意大利的
8. 餐馆 9. 比萨饼 10. 大街；街道
11. 到达 12. 全球（卫星）定位系统
13.（give 的过去式）提供；交给
14. 特点 15. 跟着 16. 较远的 17. 告诉

二、1. turn left 2. turn right 3. go straight

三、1. How can we get there?
2. Turn left at the bookstore.
3. 让我们右转然后再右转。
4. 请跟着我！
5. 我的新全球定位系统起作用了！

Unit 2 基础默写卡

Part A

一、1. by 2. bus 3. plane 4. taxi 5. ship
6. subway 7. train 8. 夫人 9. 早到的

二、1. come to school 2. by car 3. by bike
4. on foot 5. by taxi 6. by subway

三、1. How do you come to school?
2. Usually, I come on foot.
3. 有时候我乘公共汽车来。
4. 那是很好的运动。
5. 让我们去自然公园吧。
6. 你怎样从中国到美国？

Part B

一、1. slow 2. down 3. stop 4. 头盔 5. 必须
6. 戴 7. 注意 8. 交通 9. 慕尼黑
10. 德国 11. 阿拉斯加州（美国州名）
12. 雪橇 13. 快的 14. 轮渡
15. 帕帕韦斯特雷岛 16. 苏格兰

二、1. slow down 2. 注意 3. 交通信号灯

三、1. In the USA people on bikes must wear one.
2. Don't go at the red light!
3. I must pay attention to the traffic lights!
4. We must stop and wait.
5. 你必须穿一件救生衣。
6. 不要在轮渡上跑。

Unit 3 基础默写卡

Part A

一、1. visit 2. film 3. trip 4. supermarket
5. evening 6. tonight 7. tomorrow 8. 课

二、1. see a film 2. take a trip
3. next week 4. 周末计划
5. this morning 6. this afternoon
7. this evening 8. go to the supermarket
9. visit my grandparents

三、1. What are you going to do tomorrow?
2. I'm going to have an art lesson.
3. We're going to draw some pictures in Renmin Park.
4. 听起来很棒！
5. 现在我必须做我的家庭作业了。

Part B

一、1. dictionary 2. comic 3. word 4. postcard
5. 太空 6.（尤指长途）旅行 7. 一半
8. 价格 9. 一起 10. 月饼
11. 诗 12. 月亮

二、1. comic book 2. word book 3. 中秋节
4. 聚会 5. 太空旅行 6. 许多

三、1. Where are you going?
2. We're going to the cinema.
3. When are you going?
4. 那时是半价！
5. 为什么不星期二去呢？
6. 我有许多有关太空的连环画册。

Unit 4 基础默写卡

Part A

一、1. 笔友 2. 业余爱好
3. 茉莉 4. 想法；主意

二、1. dancing 2. singing
3. reading stories 4. playing football
5. doing kung fu

三、1. What are Peter's hobbies?
2. He likes reading stories.
3. 他也喜欢唱歌。
4. 我打算教他中国歌曲《茉莉花》！

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Part B

一、1. studies　2. puzzle　3. hiking
4. 堪培拉（澳大利亚首都）　5. 令人惊奇的
6. 表示征求意见　7. 射门　8. 加入
9. 俱乐部　10. 分享

二、1. does　2. cooks　3. studies
4. goes　5. has　6. teaches

三、1. cooks Chinese food　2. studies Chinese
3. does word puzzles　4. goes hiking

四、1. Does he live in Sydney?
2. No, he doesn't.
3. Does he like doing word puzzles and going hiking?
4. Yes, he does.
5. 我正在给我澳大利亚的新笔友写电子邮件。
6. 我也可以做他的笔友吗？

Unit 5 基础默写卡

Part A

一、1. factory　2. worker　3. postman
4. businessman　5. police officer
6. 国家　7. 校长

二、1. driver　2. cleaner　3. writer
4. dancer　5. worker　6. player
7. teacher　8. waiter　9. businesswoman
10. policewoman

三、1. What does he do?　2. He's a businessman.
3. 你也想当校长吗？　4. 我想当商人。

Part B

一、1. fisherman　2. scientist　3. pilot
4. coach　5. 大海　6. 保持　7. 大学
8. 体育馆　9. 如果　10. 记者
11. 使用　12. 打字　13. 迅速地　14. 秘书

二、1. 健康的生活　2. 努力学习
3. 保持健康　4. 体育记者　5. 打字很快

三、1. Where does he work?
2. He works at sea.
3. How does he go to work?
4. He goes to work by bike.
5. 如果你喜欢体育运动，你可以成为一名教练、体育记者或者体育老师。

Unit 6 基础默写卡

Part A

一、1. angry　2. afraid　3. sad　4. worried
5. happy　6. 追赶　7. 老鼠
8. 邪恶的；坏的　9.（使）受伤
10. 有病；不舒服

二、1. They're afraid of him.
2. The cat is angry with them.
3. 这部漫画是关于什么的？
4. 他追赶老鼠。
5. 因为老鼠很坏。

Part B

一、1. wear　2. more　3. deep　4. breath
5. count　6. 有毛病　7. 应该
8. 觉得；感到　9. 健康；身体好
10. 坐　11. 草坪　12. 听见
13. 蚂蚁　14. 担心；担忧
15. 陷住；无法移动　16. 泥
17. 拉；拽　18. 每人

二、1. see a doctor　2. take a deep breath
3. count to ten　4. 做更多的锻炼
5. 穿暖和的衣服　6. 坐在草地上
7. 陷进泥里

三、1. What's wrong?
2. Your father is ill.
3. He should see a doctor this morning.
4. Don't be sad.
5. 他应该做些什么？
6. 你应该做更多的锻炼。
7. 他现在觉得怎么样？

检测卷部分

Unit 1 达标检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. Turn right, please.
2. Turn left, please.
3. There's a pet hospital in my city.
4. What a great Italian restaurant!
5. Look, these children are at the crossing.

二、1. Let's go to the post office.
2. Excuse me, sir. Where is the cinema?
3. Please turn right at the crossing.
4. The park is next to the school.
5. The bookstore is far from the farm.

三、1. What's this?
2. Excuse me, where is the new park?
3. How can I get there?
4. Is it far from here?
5. Is there a library near your house?

四、1. **Man**: Excuse me, where is the hospital?
Woman: It's near the shop on Dongfeng Street.
2. **Man**: Is there a post office near here? I want to buy some postcards.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Woman: No, there isn't. You can buy some at that shop.

3. **Man**: How can I get to the cinema from this park?
Woman: Go straight and turn left at the big shop.

4. **Man**: Now we are in front of the hospital. Where is the bookstore? Turn right?
Woman: No, turn left at the post office.

5. **Man**: What can help us find the place?
Woman: A map or a GPS can help us.

答案：

一、1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T

二、4 1 5 2 3

三、1. C 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. C

四、1. C 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. B

五、1. ↘ 2. ↗ 3. ↗ 4. ↘
5. ↗ **点拨**：此题需要掌握升降调的基本规则。一般情况下，陈述句、特殊疑问句读降调，如第1句与第4句，一般疑问句读升调，如第2句与第5句。此外，表达委婉的、礼貌的语气时也常读升调，如第3句。

六、1. hospital 2. bookstore 3. straight 4. cinema 5. science museum

七、1. B 2. A 3. A 4. C 5. B
6. C 7. A 8. B 9. C 10. A

八、1. C 2. D 3. A 4. E 5. B

九、1. B 2. E 3. C 4. A 5. F

十、1. B 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. C

十一、**范文**：Hi, I'm Mike. I want to go to the post office to send a postcard. I start from my house. I go straight for ten minutes. Then I turn left at the cinema. Then I go straight again. I can see a museum on my left. The post office is next to it. I can send my postcard now.

Unit 2 达标检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. It's snowy. We go by sled.
2. Please wear a helmet.
3. He goes to work by ferry every day.
4. It is in Germany.
5. Pay attention to the traffic lights.

二、1. Mrs Green is our English teacher.
2. My father goes to Hubei by train.
3. We usually go to school on foot.
4. You can go there by train.
5. Let's take a plane. It's fast.

三、1. **Man**: Stop, please. Pay attention to the traffic lights.
Woman: Oh, it's red now. Thank you.

2. **Man**: Excuse me, how can I get to Renmin Hospital?
Woman: You can take the No. 32 bus over there.

3. **Man**: How do you go to work?
Woman: I often go by subway.

4. **Man**: How do you get to Qingdao from Tianjin?
Woman: I go there by ship.

5. **Man**: I sometimes go to school by sled.
Woman: Oh, that's cool. But you must drive slowly.

四、Hello, I'm Tom. I'm a boy. I live near my school. I usually go to school on foot. Sometimes I go by bike. My friend Jenny lives far from school. She usually goes to school by car. Sometimes she goes by bus. Danny always goes to school by bus. He never goes on foot. Sam usually goes by bike. Sometimes he goes by bus. Lucy always walks to school. She never goes by bike.

答案：

一、3 1 5 2 4

二、1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T

三、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F

四、Tom: U; S; /; / Jenny: /; /; S; U
Danny: N; /; A; / Sam: /; U; S; /
Lucy: A; N; /; /

五、1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. F

六、1. plane 2. taxi 3. bus 4. slow 5. train

七、1. B
2. A **点拨**：on...side 为固定搭配，香港与英国的交通规则是一样的，车辆需靠左行驶。
3. A **点拨**：let's 后跟动词原形，by 为介词，不符合要求。home 为副词，前面不需要使用介词 to。
4. C 5. B
6. A **点拨**：在某个国家应用介词 in，people on bikes 指骑在自行车上的人们。
7. A 8. C 9. B 10. B

八、1. Don't go at a red light.
2. How does he often get there?
3. He usually goes to the nature park on foot.
4. Does Amy come to school by bus?
5. How many traffic lights are there in every country?

九、1. B 2. D 3. C 4. E 5. A

十、(一) 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. A
(二) 1. T 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. F

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

十一、范文

I live near school. I often go to school on foot. I like walking with my friends together. My mother goes to work by bike. My father often goes to work by car. I like walking and riding a bike. I think they are good for our body. And they are good for our city.

Unit 3 达标检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. What are you going to do this evening?
2. I'm going to wash clothes tomorrow morning.
3. He is going to do his homework.
4. I want to buy a dictionary.
5. We are going to take a bus to the nature park.

二、1. **Man**: What are you going to do this evening?
Woman: I'm going to watch TV at home.
2. **Man**: Where are you going this Sunday?
Woman: We're going to the nature park to have a picnic.
3. **Man**: When will your family get together?
Woman: It's Mid-Autumn Festival this Sunday. We will have a big dinner together.
4. **Man**: Do you want to buy some comic books about space travel?
Woman: No, I have lots of them. I want to buy a word book.
5. **Man**: What a big supermarket! What are you going to buy?
Woman: I'm going to buy some fruit and vegetables.

三、1. What is your sister going to do this afternoon?
2. Where are you going this Saturday?
3. When is Tom going to the nature park?
4. How are you going to Beijing?
5. Do you want to buy any postcards?

四、Tomorrow is Sunday. Lucy is going to the zoo with her friends in the morning. They are going by subway. She likes the pandas and monkeys. In the afternoon, she is going to buy some storybooks. In the evening, she is going to visit her grandparents on foot. Their home is near. She is going to have dinner with them. She will have a happy weekend.

答案：

一、1. C 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. C
二、1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T
三、2 5 3 1 4
四、1. B 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. A
五、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. C
六、1. take; trip 2. supermarket 3. zoo
4. dictionary 5. postcard
七、1. A 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. C
八、1. I'm going to school on foot tomorrow.
2. We are singing songs at the party now.
3. What is he going to buy?
4. She isn't going to read a book this evening.
5. What is your father going to do this afternoon?
九、1. C 2. E 3. A 4. D 5. B
十、(一) 第二幅、第四幅、第五幅
(二) 1. B 2. A 3. A 4. C 5. A
十一、范文

My Winter Holiday Plan

Winter holiday is coming. I'm excited. I like winter holiday very much. I am going to read some interesting books in winter holiday. The Spring Festival is in winter holiday. I will visit my grandparents. I will make dumplings with my mother. I will help my parents clean our rooms. I will play with my friends. I will have a happy winter holiday.

期中检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. We can get some pizza in an Italian restaurant.
2. Excuse me, where is the science museum?
3. They will go to Shanghai by plane.
4. I'm going to visit my grandparents this evening.
5. We eat *zongzi* at the Dragon Boat Festival.

二、1. We get together in the festival.
2. They are going to see a film this evening.
3. How can we get to the bookstore?
4. Turn left at the crossing.
5. Pay attention to the traffic lights.

三、1. Jenny is going to swim this afternoon, and then she will play with her friends.
2. Danny is going to the zoo by bike.
3. Tom will go to the park by subway.
4. Jack will buy a dictionary on foot.
5. Peter will buy some books and then draw some pictures.

四、Tomorrow is Children's Day. We won't go to school. I'm going to get up early and do my homework in the morning. I'm going to the bookstore in the afternoon. I'm going there on foot. Because it's near my home. When I cross the road, I pay attention to the traffic lights. What are you going to do tomorrow?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

答案：

一、1. T　2. F　3. F　4. T　5. F

二、3　5　1　4　2

三、1. B；I　2. A；E　3. D；F　4. G；J

5. C；H

四、1. B　2. A　3. C　4. C　5. A

五、1. B；science museum

2. E；plane

3. A；supermarket　4. D；hospital

5. C；ship

六、1. is going to visit　**点拨**：next week 为将来的时间，应用一般将来时。

2. us　**点拨**：tell 为动词，其后出现的人称代词使用宾格形式。

3. draws　4. go　5. slowly

七、1. A　2. C　3. C　4. A　5. C

6. C　7. A　8. B　9. B　10. A

八、1. C　2. B　3. A　4. C　5. B

九、1. B　2. A　3. D　4. E　5. C

十、1. B　2. A　3. A　4. C　5. C

十一、范文

Dear Jack,

How are you? I'm fine now. I will be happy next weekend. I'm going to do my homework in the morning. Then I'm going to clean my room. In the afternoon, I'm going to the cinema by bus. I'm going to see a film with my friends. We will have a good time.

Yours,

Oliver

Unit 4 达标检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. My sister likes dancing very much.

2. Dongdong likes playing football with his friends.

3. Lingling likes doing kung fu. She does well.

4. My father often cooks food for us.

5. Tom likes reading stories.

二、1. My little sister likes collecting leaves in autumn.

2. Li Ming's brother likes climbing mountains very much.

3. Peter likes making robots.

4. Lily's aunt likes dancing.

5. My little brother likes watching TV.

三、1. Jenny likes playing sports. She often plays basketball and volleyball with her friends.

2. Lynn likes planting flowers. She thinks they are beautiful.

3. Sam likes reading books a lot. He often reads a book in the afternoon.

4. Linda likes swimming. She often goes swimming on Sundays.

5. Tom likes listening to music. That can make him happy.

四、I have a pen pal. His name is John. He is tall and strong. He likes playing sports very much. And he also likes watching TV. He lives far from his school. He often goes to school by bus. We often write emails to each other.

答案：

一、1. F　2. T　3. T　4. T　5. F

二、2　4　1　5　3

三、1－B　2－D　3－A　4－C　5－E

四、1. B　2. A　3. A　4. C　5. B

五、1. studies　2. does；puzzles

3. goes hiking　4. Canberra　5. clubs

六、1. C

2. A　**点拨**：my brother 为第三人称单数，like 需要加 s。play + the + 乐器名称，表示演奏某种乐器。

3. B　4. B　5. A　6. C

7. B　**点拨**：这里 teach 需要使用第三人称单数形式，加 es，动词后出现的人称代词为宾格形式。

8. C　9. B

10. C　**点拨**：lots of 和 a lot of 的意思都是大量的，后接名词。a lot 此处为副词，可放在动词短语之后。

七、1. C　2. A　3. B　4. E　5. D

八、1. Every afternoon she studies Chinese and does her homework.

2. Does Lucy love to play with her cat?

3. My grandma doesn't have any nice cake.　**点拨**：在否定句里，一般不用 some，要用 any。

4. What are your hobbies?

5. No, he doesn't.

九、1. B　2. A　3. E　4. D　5. C

十、（一）1. tall

2. playing basketball after school

3. playing basketball at a gym on weekends

4. singing　5. drawing

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

（二）1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T

十一、范文

Dear Kim,

How are you? I'd like to tell something about my family. My parents are teachers. They like reading books. I like reading books, too. We live in Beijing. There are many interesting places in Beijing. The Great Wall is very old and very long. You can come to Beijing and visit it with me.

Come to China soon.

Yours,
Chen Jie

Unit 5 达标检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. He works on a farm.
2. She is a cleaner.
3. My father goes to work by car.
4. He wants to be a taxi driver.
5. Linda is good at art.

二、1. Tom likes using the computer. He can type very quickly.
2. He works on a boat. He is strong.
3. Lily's mother works at a pet hospital.
4. She is going to be a great writer.
5. Tom's uncle works near the sea. He is a fisherman.

三、1. What does your sister do?
2. What does your father do?
3. How does Amy's mother go to work?
4. What does Tom want to be?
5. Where does Lucy work?

四、Hi, I'm Linda. I have a new pen pal. Her name is Li Mei. She is from China. She is a pupil. Her mother is a doctor. She goes to work by bus. Her father is a postman. He goes to work by car. They like going hiking and drawing pictures. They are a happy family.

答案：

一、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. C
二、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. F
三、1. C 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. B
四、1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. F
五、1. C 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. B
六、1. pilot 2. fisherman 3. coach
4. police officer 5. businessman
七、1. A **点拨：**university 的第一个音素为辅音，所以选择 a。
2. C **点拨：**at sea 为固定搭配，意思是“在海上”。
3. B 4. B 5. C
八、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F
九、1. What does your mother do?
2. What does Amy's sister want to be?
3. How does Susan often go to work?
4. Is her grandmother a teacher?
5. Where does your uncle work?
十、（一）3 1 4 5 2
（二）1. animal tamer 2. cowboy
3. ballerina 4. bee farmer
5. computer game tester
十一、范文

I'm a boy. I like playing sports a lot. I often go running in the morning and play football after school with my friends. On Sunday, I often go to a football school to learn to play football. I want to be a good football player. My friend Tom likes singing and dancing very much. He wants to be an actor. I think that's cool.

Unit 6 达标检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. I don't like mice. They are very bad.
2. Look at the grass. It's green.
3. I can play football well.
4. Is that man bad?
5. What should I do?

二、1. She is very happy today.
2. Look at the ants. Maybe it will be rainy.
3. The boy is stuck. He is sad.
4. Oh, my brother hurts his leg.
5. It's cold. He should wear warm clothes.

三、1. What is the film about?
2. Why is his mother so worried?
3. How does your brother feel now?
4. What's wrong with your computer?
5. My father is so angry. What should he do?

四、A little duck lives on a farm. He is not yellow. He is gray. No one likes him. No one wants to play with him. He feels very sad. He goes to a zoo one day. He sees some beautiful birds there. The birds say that he will be beautiful like them one day. The little duck is very happy.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

答案：

一、1. A　2. A　3. C　4. C　5. B

二、1. F　2. T　3. T　4. T　5. F

三、1. A　2. B　3. B　4. A　5. A

四、1. C　2. B　3. C　4. A　5. C

五、1. B　2. A　3. B　4. C　5. A

六、1. angry; deep breath

2. see; doctor　3. afraid

4. count to ten　5. worried

七、1. B　**点拨：**everyone 强调每一个人，为单数，与 is 搭配使用。

2. A　3. C

4. A　**点拨：**listen 的意思是“听”，可单独使用，用来提醒对方注意。hear 的意思是“听见”。

5. B

八、1. C　2. A　3. E　4. B　5. D

九、1. How's the weather today?

2. How do you feel now?

3. Don't sit down, please.

4. He should do more exercise.

5. Linda should see a doctor this morning.

十、1. B　2. A　3. D　4. E　5. C

十一、1. B　2. A　3. C　4. B　5. C

6. No　**点拨：**最后他获得了小狗，所以今年他还是有礼物的，只是礼物来得晚了些。

7. No　8. Yes　9. No　10. Yes

十二、范文

It's Sunday morning. The weather is nice. Tom, John, Peter and Tom's dog, Dogie go to the park to play football. They play together. They are very happy. Suddenly, the ball falls in the river. Tom, John and Peter are sad. They try to take the ball. But they can't. Dogie jumps into the river. Tom is worried. Dogie can swim! He takes the ball back. Good boy, Dogie! They are so excited.

期末检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. Some children have to go to school by ferry.

2. You should do it now.

3. What are you going to do tonight?

4. My family will get together every Friday evening.

5. We must do exercise every day and stay healthy.

二、1. On Children's Day, lots of children go to see a film.

2. There is a big hospital near my home.

3. Take a deep breath, and then you won't be so angry.

4. Every morning, lots of people take the subway to work.

5. Scientists are very important for our country.

三、1. How can I get to the restaurant?

2. What are you going to do this Sunday?

3. What is your brother's hobby?

4. Where does your aunt work?

5. What's wrong?

四、Hello, I'm Linda. I'm a student. I go to school by bike. I like drawing pictures. This is my father. He is a coach. He works in a gym. He goes to work by car. He likes going hiking. This is my mother. She is a worker. She works at a factory. She goes to work by bus. She likes watching TV. This is my brother. He is a businessman. He goes to work by car. He works in his office. He likes doing word puzzles.

答案：

一、1. B　2. A　3. B　4. C　5. B

二、2　4　1　5　3

三、1. B　2. C　3. B　4. A　5. B

四、1. bike　2. coach　3. car

4. going hiking　5. worker　6. factory

7. bus　8. businessman　9. car

10. doing word puzzles

五、1. museum; park　2. train; bike

3. businessman; fisherman

4. evening; morning　5. hot; happy

六、1. B; cinema　2. D; subway

3. A; postcard　4. E; policeman

5. C; pilot

七、1. B　2. A　3. B　4. C　5. A

八、1. F　2. T　3. T　4. F　5. T

九、1. Where; museum

2. How can I get to Tianjin?

3. His uncle is going to take a trip next Sunday.

4. He studies English on Saturday morning.

5. We must pay attention to the traffic lights.

十、1. B　2. D　3. E　4. A　5. C

十一、(一) 1. She usually plays the piano.

2. He likes reading books.

3. She is cleaning the rooms.

(二) 4. No　5. Yes

十二、范文

Dear Lily,

How are you? I'm Lucy. I'm a girl. I live in Hong Kong. I live far from my school. I often go to school by bus. I like drawing, singing songs and I also like reading books. What about you? I know Wuhan is a very beautiful city. I will go and visit you one day. And I will visit Wuhan with you. Write to me soon.

Yours,

Lucy

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

荣德基 主编

典中点®

综合应用创新题 典中点

一本在做题中教会你学习方法的书

名师划重点



六年级 英语

上（PEP版）

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

目录
Contents

Unit 1 How can I get there?

Part A …… 2

Part B …… 4

Unit 2 Ways to go to school

Part A …… 7

Part B …… 9

Unit 3 My weekend plan

Part A …… 12

Part B …… 14

Unit 4 I have a pen pal

Part A ……17

Part B …… 18

Unit 5 What does he do?

Part A ……22

Part B …… 24

Unit 6 How do you feel?

Part A ……27

Part B …… 29

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 How can I get there?



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Part A

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. science 科学　　2. museum 博物馆
3. bookstore 书店　　4. cinema 电影院
5. hospital 医院　　6. post office 邮局

加减记忆法：把一个已经认识的单词和另外一个或几个单词合成一个生词来记忆的方法。如：book（书）+ store（商店）= bookstore（书店）等单词。

二、我要掌握的句型

1. —Where is the museum shop? 博物馆商店在哪儿？
   —It's near the door. 在大门附近。
2. I want to buy a postcard. 我想买一张明信片。
3. What a great museum! 多棒的一个博物馆呀！

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
Wu Yifan: Robin, where is the museum shop? I want to buy a postcard.	吴一凡：罗宾，博物馆的商店在哪儿？我想买一张明信片。
Robin: It's near the door.	罗宾：在大门附近。
Wu Yifan: Thanks. Where is the post office? I want to send it today.	吴一凡：谢谢。邮局在哪儿？我想今天邮寄它。
Robin: I don't know. I'll ask. Excuse me, sir.	罗宾：我不知道。我问问。打扰了，先生。
Man: Wow! A talking robot! What a great museum!	男人：哇！一个会说话的机器人！多棒的一个博物馆呀！
Robin: Where is the post office?	罗宾：邮局在哪儿？
Man: It's next to the museum.	男人：它在博物馆的旁边。
Robin: Thanks.	罗宾：谢谢。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

1. —Where is the museum shop? 博物馆商店在哪儿？

—It's near the door. 在大门附近。

①问句：该句用于问路，它的基本句型是：Where be + 地点名词？

答语：It's/They're + 表示位置的介词（短语）+ 地点。在口语中，只用表示地点的介词短语回答也可以。

例句：—Where is the zoo? 动物园在哪儿？

—Near the museum. 在博物馆附近。

—Where are your friends? 你的朋友们在哪呢？

—They're in the bookstore. 他们在书店里。

②near 与 next to 的区别：

near 是介词，意为“在……附近”。next to 是介词短语，意为“相邻，紧挨着”，距离上比 near 更近。

2. I want to buy a postcard. 我想买一张明信片。

①want to + 动词原形，表示“想要做某事”。

例句：They want to go to the zoo. 他们想去动物园。

②want + 名词，表示“想要某物”。

例句：I want an apple. 我想要一个苹果。

3. What a great museum! 多棒的一个博物馆呀！

感叹句的基本句型为：What + a/an + 形容词 + 名词 + （主语 + 谓语）！

例句：What a beautiful park (it is)! 多漂亮的公园啊！

What cute dogs (they are)! 多可爱的狗啊！

What an interesting story! 多有趣的故事啊！

同学们，当你来到英国或者美国时，你如何问路呢？

在问路之前，应先说“Excuse me.”，这样既能引起对方的注意，也显得比较有礼貌。此时“excuse me”译为“劳驾；打扰一下”，不能译为“对不起”，故此处不可用“sorry”来代替“excuse me”。问完路后，记得说“Thank you. / Thanks a lot.”等表示感谢。这样看来，中西方在问路方面还是一致的，先为打扰别人而表示歉意，在问完路后，都会表示感谢。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Part A

我会背单词

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. crossing 十字路口　　2. turn 转弯　　3. left 左
4. straight 笔直的　　5. right 右

二、我要掌握的句型

1. How can we get there? 我们怎么能到那儿？
2. Turn left at the bookstore. 到书店左转。

我会读课文

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
Mike: What an interesting film!	迈克：多么有趣的一部电影呀！
Wu Yifan: Yes, but I'm hungry now. I know a great Italian restaurant.	吴一凡：是的，但是我现在饿了。我知道一家很棒的意大利餐馆。
Mike: Yum! I like pizza! Where is the restaurant?	迈克：好吃极了！我喜欢比萨！这个餐馆在哪儿？
Wu Yifan: It's next to the park on Dongfang Street.	吴一凡：它在东方大街，与公园相邻。
Mike: How can we get there?	迈克：我们怎么能到那儿？
Robin: Turn left at the bookstore. Then turn right at the hospital.	罗宾：到书店左转。然后到医院再右转。
Mike: OK. Let's go!	迈克：好的。我们走吧！

我会学句子

1. How can we get there? 我们怎么能到那儿？

①can 是情态动词，意为“能；能够”，后跟动词原形。

②get to + 地点名词，表示“到达某地”。

get 后面跟 here/there/home 等副词时，to 要省略。

例句：How can I get there? 我怎样能到那儿？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

How can we get to the bookstore? 我们怎样能去书店？

③同义句：Can you tell me the way to + 地点?

Where is + 地点?

Which is the way to + 地点?

2. Turn left at the bookstore. 到书店左转。

表示“到某地向左转/向右转”的句型：Turn left/right at + 地点，介词要用 at。

例句：Turn right at the post office. 到邮局右转。

你了解英国的交通吗?

英国是现在仅有的几个靠左侧行车的国家之一，与我们靠右侧行驶的规则正好相反。特别是英国的街道上行人和自行车很少，汽车的车速一般比较快。

在英国，过马路的时候，如果有人行通道，请一定走人行通道。一般的人行通道都有交通灯，按一下交通灯的按钮，等交通灯变绿之后再过马路。

英国的公共汽车站是没有站名的，且车上也没有售票员，没有人报站名，所以你一定要记准方位，或者让司机提醒一下。英国的所有公共汽车均只有一个门，中间隔开，一侧下车一侧上车，上车必须向司机买票。

如何写“指路类”小作文

一、思维步骤：

1. 弄清楚目的地是哪儿。
2. 利用“向左右转和直行”来规划前去目的地的路线。
3. 把可能用到的单词、指路的词组以及表示方位的词组列出来。
4. 连词成句，连句成篇。

二、精彩词句：

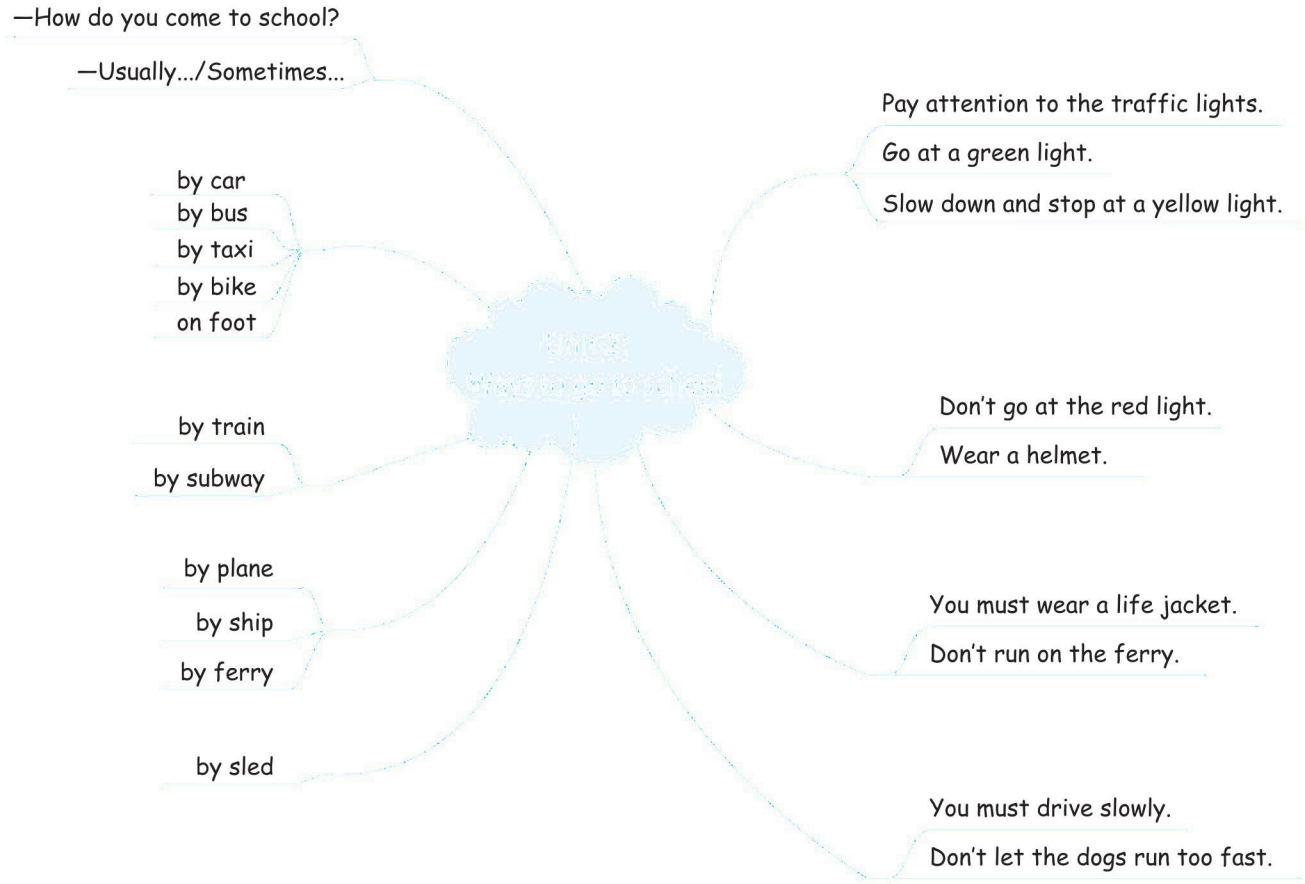
1. 开篇句：I know the park/... It's not far from my school/... It's in front of/...
2. 用“first, then, last”来衔接语句，弄清楚逻辑顺序。First, turn left at the crossing/...
3. 结尾句：You can see it next to/.../

三、经典范文：

I know the park. It's not far from my school. You can get there by bike. First, go straight along the road. Then turn left at the first crossing. And turn right at the hospital. You can see a museum on your right. The park is next to the museum.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 Ways to go to school



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多习资料

Part A

我要掌握的

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. on foot 步行
2. by（表示方式）乘
3. bus 公共汽车
4. plane 飞机
5. taxi 出租车
6. ship（大）船
7. subway 地铁
8. train 火车

二、我要掌握的句型

1. How do you come to school? 你们怎么来上学的？
2. Usually, I come on foot. 通常，我走路来。
3. Sometimes I come by bus. 有时候我坐公共汽车来。

我的达人秀

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
Mike: Good morning, Mrs Smith!	迈克：早上好，史密斯夫人！
Mrs Smith: Hi, children. You're early. How do you come to school?	史密斯夫人：嗨，孩子们。你们真早。你们怎么来上学的？
Amy: Usually, I come on foot. Sometimes I come by bus.	艾米：通常，我走路来。有时候我坐公共汽车来。
Mike: I often come by bike.	迈克：我经常骑自行车来。
Amy: How do you come to school, Mrs Smith? By car?	艾米：史密斯夫人，你怎么来学校？开车吗？
Mrs Smith: Sometimes, but I usually walk.	史密斯夫人：有时开车，但是我通常步行。
Mike: That's good exercise.	迈克：那是很好的锻炼。

重点突破

1. How do come to school? 你们怎么来上学的？

“How do you come/go（to）+ 地点？”用来询问对方“来某地或去某地的出行方式”。

例句：How do you come to Hainan? 你怎么来海南的？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

答语：I/We come/go（to）+地点 +表示出行方式的介词短语。或直接用表示出行方式的介词短语。

例句：—How do you go to the zoo? 你怎样去动物园？

—I go on foot. /On foot. 我步行去。

2. Usually, I come on foot. 通常，我走路来。

时态记忆法则 “频度副词”

频率	频度副词	用法
高低	always	意为“总是”，发生频率为100%。
	usually	意为“通常；一般”，发生频率为80%。
	often	意为“经常”，发生频率为60%。
	sometimes	意为“有时”，发生频率为40%。
	never	意为“从不”，发生频率为0%。

句型特点解析 频度副词在句子中一般位于实义动词之前，be动词、助动词或情态动词之后。但有时也放在句首用来强调频率。

例句：I often do homework here. 我经常在这里做作业。

Peter is never late for school. 彼得上学从不迟到。

3. Sometimes I come by bus. 有时候我坐公共汽车来。

①by的用法：by是一个介词，在此表示方式，意为“乘”，by后面直接加表示交通工具的单数名词形式。如：by bike骑自行车，by bus坐公共汽车，by ship乘船，by plane乘飞机。

②辨析“by +交通工具”，“in/on +限定词 +交通工具”和“take +冠词 +交通工具”

短语	用法	示例
by +交通工具	表示交通工具的名词用单数，且前面不加冠词或物主代词	by car 乘小汽车
in/on +限定词 +交通工具	表示交通工具的名词前必须有冠词、名词所有格或形容词性物主代词等	in a car 乘小汽车
take +冠词 +交通工具	此短语为动词短语	take a car 乘小汽车

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. slow（使）放慢速度；慢的　　2. down 减少；降低

3. slow down 慢下来　　4. stop 停下

二、我要掌握的句型

1. In the USA people on bikes must wear one.

在美国骑自行车的人必须戴一顶（头盔）。

2. Don't go at the red light! 别闯红灯！

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
Wu Yifan: Mr Jones, how can I get to the Fuxing Hospital?	吴一凡：琼斯先生，我怎样能到复兴医院？
Mr Jones: Take the No. 57 bus over there.	琼斯先生：乘坐那边的 57 路公共汽车。
Wu Yifan: Thanks. Wow! So many pictures of bikes!	吴一凡：谢谢！哇唔！这么多张自行车照片呀！
Mr Jones: They're from my cousin in the USA.	琼斯先生：它们来自于我在美国的表哥。
Wu Yifan: What's this?	吴一凡：这是什么？
Mr Jones: A helmet. In the USA people on bikes must wear one.	琼斯先生：头盔。在美国骑自行车的人必须戴一顶（头盔）。
Wu Yifan: I see. Oh, the bus is coming! Bye, Mr Jones.	吴一凡：我明白了。哦，公共汽车要来了！再见，琼斯先生。
Mr Jones: Hey, don't go at the red light!	琼斯先生：嘿，别闯红灯！
Wu Yifan: Oh, right! Thanks. I must pay attention to the traffic lights!	吴一凡：哦，对！谢谢。我必须注意交通信号灯！

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

1. In the USA people on bikes must wear one. 在美国骑自行车的人必须戴一顶（头盔）。

①must /mʌst/ 意为“必须”，是情态动词，后跟动词原形，表示命令、要求，侧重于主观看法，强调有必要或有义务去做某事。

例句：I must study hard. 我必须努力学习。

②wear /weə（r）/ 戴，表示穿着的状态，而 put on 意为“穿上”，强调穿的动作。

例句：I often wear my glasses. 我经常戴着我的眼镜。

It's cold outside. Put on your coat. 外面冷，穿上你的大衣。

2. Don't go at the red light! 别闯红灯！

Don't 引导的否定祈使句，其结构为“Don't + 动词原形 + 其他”，意为“不要做某事”，用于命令、请求、劝告或警告对方不要做某事。

例句：Don't open the door, please. 请不要打开门。

如何写“交通方式类”小作文（以介绍自己去学校的交通方式为例）

一、思维步骤：

1. 确定用“usually, often...”来写自己去学校的方式。
2. 准备“方式”内容：on foot/by bike/by subway.... 并可以发表对此方式的感受。
3. 准备开头句和结尾句的表达。
4. 连词成句，连句成篇。

二、精彩语句：

1. 开篇句：My school is near my home.
2. 主要内容：Usually, I go to school on foot. /Sometimes I go to school by bike.
3. 结尾句：What about you?

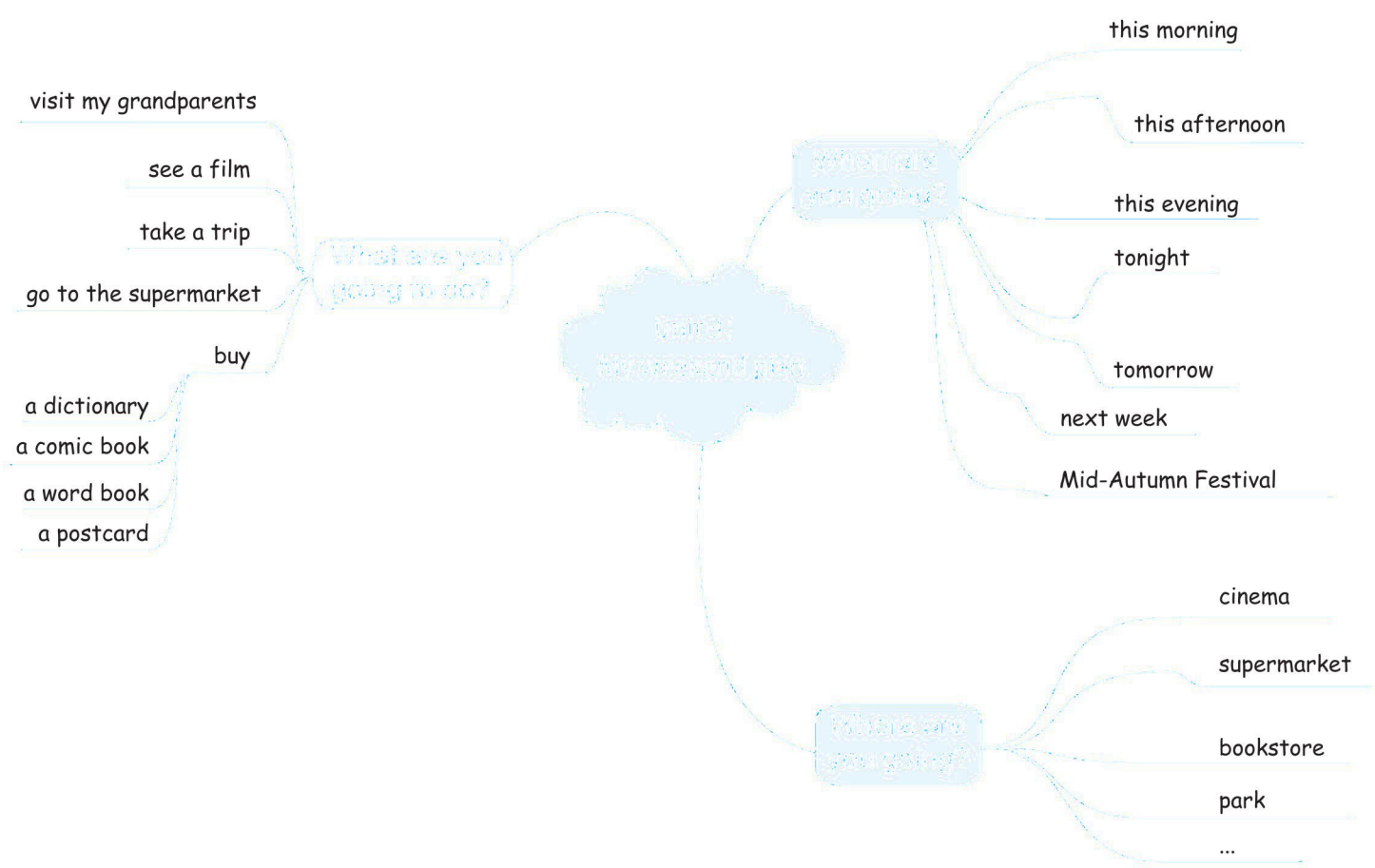
三、经典范文：

How do I go to school?

My school is near my home. Usually, I go to school on foot. I like walking. It's funny. Sometimes I go to school by bike. But I never take the subway to school. Because there are too many people. I will take my father's car to school when it rains. What about you?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 My weekend plan



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Part A

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. visit 拜访
2. film 电影
3. see a film 看电影
4. trip 旅行
5. take a trip 去旅行
6. supermarket 超市
7. evening 晚上；傍晚
8. tonight 在今晚
9. tomorrow 明天
10. next week 下周

二、我要掌握的句型

1. —What are you going to do tomorrow? 你明天打算干什么？
   —I'm going to have an art lesson. 我要上美术课。
2. Have a good time! 玩得开心！
3. I have to do my homework now. 现在我得做家庭作业了。

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
Mike: What are you going to do tomorrow?	迈克：你明天打算干什么？
Sarah: I'm going to have an art lesson.	萨拉：我要上美术课。
Mike: What are you going to do in your lesson?	迈克：你们打算在课上做什么？
Sarah: We're going to draw some pictures in Renmin Park.	萨拉：我们打算去人民公园画画。
Mike: Sounds great! I'm going to see a film tomorrow.	迈克：听起来真好！明天我打算去看电影。
Sarah: Have a good time!	萨拉：祝你玩得愉快！
Mike: You too. I have to do my homework now. Bye.	迈克：你也是。现在我得做家庭作业了。再见。
Sarah: OK. Bye.	萨拉：好吧。再见。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

语法突破

1. —What are you going to do tomorrow? 你明天打算干什么？

—I'm going to have an art lesson. 我要上美术课。

①be（am, is, are）going to 结构：

此结构常用来表示按计划或安排要发生的动作，有时也可以表示根据目前情况推测将要发生的动作，意为“打算，将要”。be going to 结构的时间状语必须是将来的时间，如：tomorrow 明天，tonight 今晚，next week 下周，this evening 今天晚上等。

②询问别人打算做什么，用 What 引导疑问句，句型为：What + be + 主语 + going to + 动词原形 + 时间/地点？

例句：What is your mother going to do tomorrow? 明天你妈妈打算做什么？

③其答语的句型结构为：主语 + be + going to + 动词原形 + 其他.

例句：My mother is going to clean the house tomorrow. 明天我妈妈打算打扫房间。

They are going to see a film this weekend. 他们打算这周末去看电影。

温馨提示 be going to 结构的 be 动词要随着主语的变化而变化。

2. Have a good time! 玩得开心！

该句在口语中常用于对即将出外旅行或游玩的人表达美好的祝愿，用来祝愿他人玩得开心、愉快，也可以说“Enjoy yourself!”。回答时说“Thanks/Thank you.”。

例句：—I'm going to take a trip tomorrow. 明天我打算去旅行。

—Have a good time! 玩得愉快！

—Thank you. 谢谢你。

3. I have to do my homework now. 现在我得做家庭作业了。

温馨提示 have to 意为“不得不”，后面接动词原形，常指迫于某种限制条件或由于客观需要而不得不做某事。而 must 也表示必须，多指说话人主观上的观点，即主观需要。

例句：It's late. I have to go home now. 天晚了，现在我得回家了。

I must study hard. 我必须努力学习。

外国文化

外国人如何过周末

英国人喜欢在周末读书看报和研究学问。有时忙里偷闲，演奏一会儿风箱、钢琴或双簧管，间或以唱歌跳舞相伴。

荷兰人喜欢在周末养花种草。每逢周末，青年恋人、中年夫妻、老年伴侣常常各自带上一枝郁金香赠送对方，或双双带着郁金香去看望亲朋好友。

德国人常常在周末进行体育活动。听音乐，或参加集邮、摄影活动，有的在周末以鸡尾酒会的形式，同亲朋好友相聚，共度愉快周末。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

我会背单词

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. dictionary 词典
2. comic 滑稽的
3. comic book（儿童的）连环画册
4. word 单词
5. word book 单词书
6. postcard 明信片

二、我要掌握的句型

1. Where are you going? 你们打算去哪里？
2. We're going to the cinema. 我们打算去看电影。
3. When are you going? 你们打算什么时候去？
4. Why not go on Tuesday? 为什么不在星期二去呢？

我能读会说

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
John: My cousin Jack is going to visit me next week.	约翰：我的表弟杰克下周打算来看望我。
Amy: That's nice. Where are you going?	艾米：那太好了。你们打算去哪里？
John: We're going to the cinema. We're going to see a film about space travel!	约翰：我们打算去看电影。我们打算看一部关于太空旅行的电影！
Amy: Cool! I have lots of comic books about space. When are you going?	艾米：好酷啊！我有许多关于太空的漫画书。你们打算什么时候去？
John: Next Wednesday.	约翰：下个星期三。
Amy: Why not go on Tuesday? It's half price then!	艾米：为什么不在星期二去呢？那时是半价！
John: Really? Thank you!	约翰：真的吗？谢谢你！

我会学句型

1. Where are you going? 你们打算去哪里？

用法：用来询问某人打算或计划去哪儿，其基本句型为：Where + be + 主语 + going（ + 将来时间）？where 是疑问副词，故句子中省略了 to。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

例句：Where is she going on Sunday? 星期天她打算去哪里？

2. We're going to the cinema. 我们打算去看电影。

这是一个现在进行时表示将来的句子，可以这样使用的动词有：go（去），come（来），leave（离开），fly（飞）等。

例句：The bus is coming. 公共汽车就要来了。

I'm leaving for Beijing next week. 我下星期要去北京。

3. When are you going? 你们打算什么时候去？

此句中 when 意为“什么时候，何时”，它引导的疑问句用来对年、月、日等时间进行提问。基本句型为：When + be 动词 + 主语 + going（ to + 地点/do sth.）？

例句：—When is he going to buy clothes? 他打算什么时候去买衣服？

—He is going to buy clothes tomorrow/Tomorrow. 他打算明天去买衣服。/明天。

4. Why not go on Tuesday? 为什么不在星期二去呢？

Why not + 动词原形？意为“为什么不……呢？”用来询问原因或用反问的语气提出建议。

例句：Why not go there by bus? 为什么不乘公共汽车去那儿呢？

如何写“周末计划类”小作文

一、思维步骤：

第一步：构思。由周末计划确定好人物、时间、地点及事件。

第二步：确定词句。①时间单词：Saturday, Sunday...

②活动单词及短语：visit my grandparents, play football, watch TV...

③句型：主语 + be going to + 动词原形 + 将来的时间

第三步：连词成句，联句成篇。加结尾句。如：What about you?

二、精彩语句：

1. I'm going to have a happy weekend.
2. On Sunday I am going to go on a picnic with my parents.
3. What about you?

三、经典范文：

I'm going to have a happy weekend. On Saturday morning, I'm going to the bookstore to buy some new books. Then I'm going to visit my grandparents. In the afternoon I am going to play football with my friends. On Sunday I am going to go on a picnic with my parents. It is my favourite thing. What about you? What are you going to do on the weekend?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 4 I have a pen pal

☆ 单元知识导图



What are his/her/your hobbies?

I like.../He likes.../She likes...

dancing

singing

reading stories

playing football

doing kung fu

What does he/she do?

He/She cooks Chinese food/studies Chinese/does word puzzles/goes hiking.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Part A

单词短语句型

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. pen pal 笔友　　2. hiking 远足　　3. hobby 业余爱好　　4. puzzle 谜

二、我要掌握的句型

1. What are Peter's hobbies? 彼得的爱好是什么？
2. He likes reading stories. 他喜欢读故事。
3. He also likes singing. 他也喜欢唱歌。

重难点突破

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
Oliver: What are Peter's hobbies?	奥利弗：彼得的爱好是什么？
Zhang Peng: He likes reading stories. He lives on a farm, so sometimes he reads to the cows!	张鹏：他喜欢读故事。他住在农场，所以有时候他读给奶牛听！
Oliver: That's interesting.	奥利弗：那很有趣。
Zhang Peng: He likes doing kung fu and swimming.	张鹏：他喜欢练功夫和游泳。
Oliver: Really? Me too !	奥利弗：真的吗？我也是！
Zhang Peng: He also likes singing.	张鹏：他也喜欢唱歌。
Oliver: Oh, you like singing, too.	奥利弗：哦，你也喜欢唱歌。
Zhang Peng: Yes. I'm going to teach him the Chinese song "Jasmine Flower"!	张鹏：是的。我打算教他中国歌曲《茉莉花》。
Oliver: Good idea!	奥利弗：好主意！

学点语法

1. What are Peter's hobbies? 彼得的爱好是什么？

①hobby *n.* 业余爱好，复数形式为 hobbies；同义词：interest 兴趣，爱好。

②询问某人业余爱好的句型为：What + be + ...'s hobby/hobbies?

用法及答语：be 动词根据句中 hobby 的单复数形式来确定。句型中的... 's 指的是名词所有

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

格，也可以是形容词性物主代词，如：Tom's, your, her, their, his 等。问他人爱好还可以用：What do/does + 某人 + like? 某人喜欢什么？如：What is his hobby? = What does he like?

③其答语为：主语 + like/likes + 名词/动词-ing 形式。

例句：—What are your hobbies? 你的爱好是什么？

—I like reading looks and listening to music. 我喜欢读书和听音乐。

2. He likes reading stories. 他喜欢读故事。

①“like + 名词”意为“喜欢某物”。

例句：I like storybooks. 我喜欢故事书。

②“like + 动词-ing 形式”意为“喜欢做某事”，表示经常性或习惯性的爱好。

例句：I like singing. 我喜欢唱歌。

③“like + to + 动词原形”意为“喜欢做某事”，侧重于一次性的行为或动作。

例句：I like to visit the Great Wall. 我喜欢参观长城。

3. He also likes singing. 他也喜欢唱歌。

辨析 also 和 too

单词	用法	示例
also 也	常放在实义动词前面。	I also like playing the piano. 我也喜欢弹钢琴。
too 也	用于肯定句，多置于句末，前面常用逗号隔开	I have a ruler, too. 我也有一把尺子。

Part 2

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. Canberra 堪培拉（澳大利亚首都）
2. amazing 令人惊奇的
3. goal 射门
4. shall 表示征求意见
5. join 加入
6. club 俱乐部
7. share 分享

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

二、我要掌握的句型

1. —Does he live in Sydney? 他住在悉尼吗？
   —No, he doesn't. 不，他不是。
2. I'm very interested in Australia. 我对澳大利亚很感兴趣。

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
John: Hey, Yifan. What are you doing?	约翰：嘿，一凡。你正在做什么？
Wu Yifan : I'm writing an email to my new pen pal in Australia.	吴一凡：我正在给我澳大利亚的新笔友写一封电子邮件。
John: Does he live in Sydney?	约翰：他住在悉尼吗？
Wu Yifan: No, he doesn ' t. He lives in Canberra. His name is John, too.	吴一凡：不，他不是。他住在堪培拉。他也叫约翰。
John: Really? Does he like doing word puzzles and going hiking?	约翰：真的吗？他喜欢猜字谜和远足吗？
Wu Yifan : Yes, he does.	吴一凡：是的，他喜欢。
John: Amazing! I like those too! Can I also be his pen pal?	约翰：太神奇了！我也喜欢那些！我也能成为他的笔友吗？
Wu Yifan: Sure. Why not?	吴一凡：当然。为什么不行呢？
John : Cool!	约翰：棒极了！

1. —Does he live in Sydney? 他住在悉尼吗？
   —No, he doesn't. 不，他不是。
   ①含有实义动词的一般疑问句结构
   问句：含有实义动词（live）的一般现在时的一般疑问句，其基本结构为：Do/Does + 主语 + 动词原形 + 其他？
   肯定回答：Yes, 主语（人称代词） + do/does.
   否定回答：No, 主语（人称代词） + don't/doesn't.
   例句：—Does your mother go to work by bus? 你妈妈乘公共汽车去上班吗？
   —Yes, she does. /No, she doesn't. 是的，她是。/ 不，她不是。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

②含有系动词的一般疑问句结构

问句：系动词 be + 主语 + 其他？

肯定回答：Yes，主语（人称代词）+ 系动词 be.

否定回答：No，主语（人称代词）+ 系动词 be 的否定形式.

例句：—Are you a teacher? 你是一位老师吗？

—Yes, I am. /No, I'm not. 是的，我是。/不，我不是。

2. I'm very interested in Australia. 我对澳大利亚很感兴趣。

用法：本句表达对某人或某物感兴趣，be interested in 意为“对……感兴趣”，其主语一般是人，后跟名词或动名词。

例句：I'm interested in music. 我对音乐感兴趣。

3. Shall we dance? 我们跳舞吧？

此句是表示征求意见或建议的常用句式，通常主语是第一人称。

句型结构：Shall I/we + 动词原形 + 其他？

例句：Shall we meet at 2 o'clock? 我们两点见面，可以吗？

如何介绍自己或者好朋友的“爱好类”小作文

一、思维步骤：

1. 确定主题（介绍个人爱好），锁定自己想要介绍的人物。
2. 用“主语 + like（s）+ 其他”句式来罗列其爱好，适当加入自己的评价或者和自己的爱好做对比。
3. 整体总结，写好结束语。

二、精彩词句：

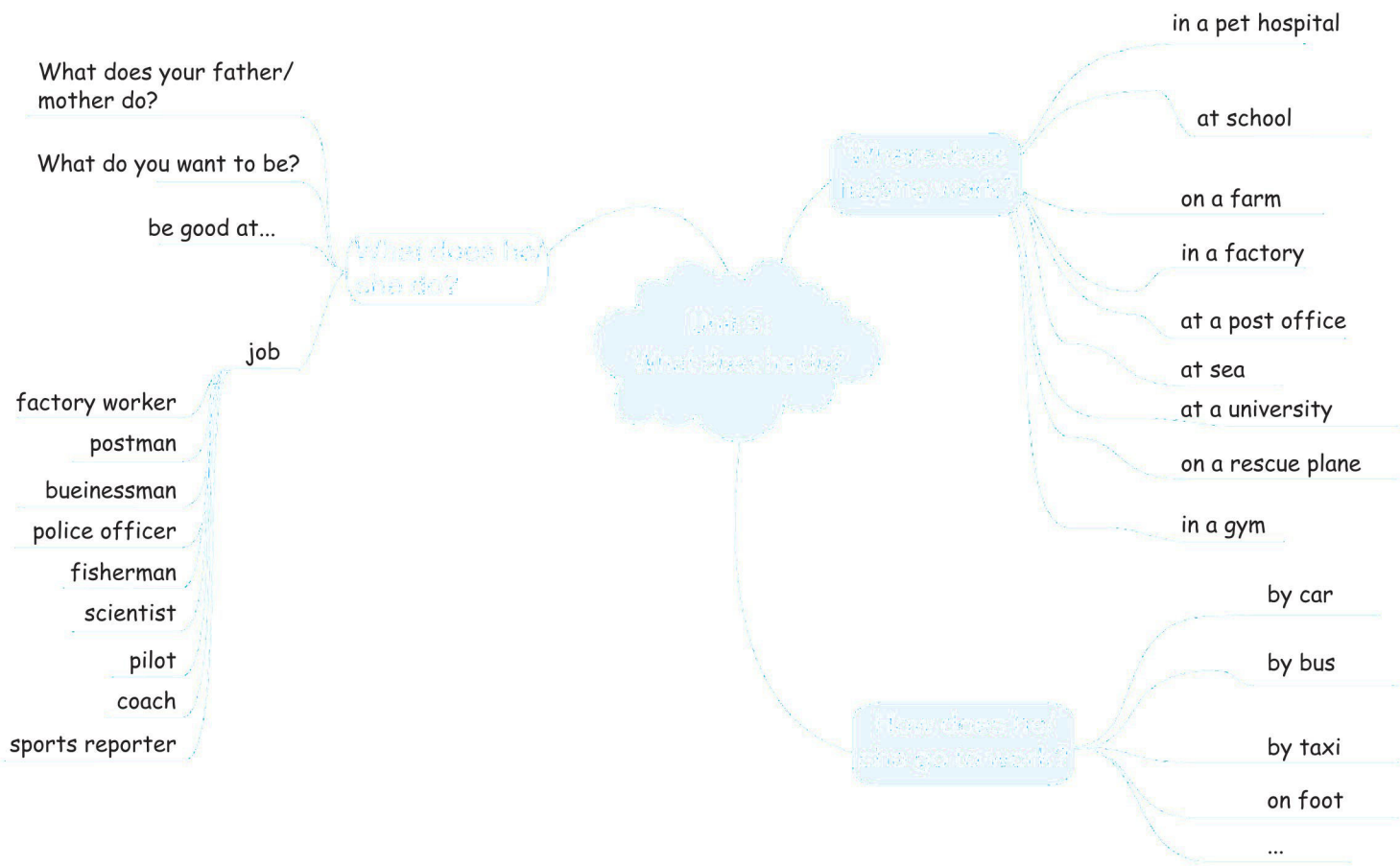
1. 开篇句：Lin Lin is my best friend. She has a lot of hobbies.
2. 表示个人喜好的相关动词（短语）：singing, dancing, making friends...
3. 结尾句：Do you like making friends?

三、经典范文：

Lin Lin is my best friend. She has a lot of hobbies. She likes singing, dancing and making friends. She often goes hiking on the weekend. She can cook Chinese food. Do you like Chinese food? She can teach you. She wants to study English. Can you help her? Do you like making friends?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 5 What does he do?



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Part A

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. factory 工厂　　2. worker 工人

3. businessman 商人；企业家

二、我要掌握的句型

1. —What does he do? 他是做什么的？

   —He's a businessman. 他是一名商人。

2. I want to be a businessman. 我想成为一名商人。

3. —Is your father a postman? 你爸爸是邮递员吗？

   —No, he isn't. 不，他不是。

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
Sarah: Is your father here today?	萨拉：今天你的父亲在这儿吗？
Oliver: No. He's in Australia.	奥利弗：不。他在澳大利亚。
Sarah: What does he do?	萨拉：他是做什么的？
Oliver: He's a businessman. He often goes to other countries.	奥利弗：他是一名商人。他经常去其他的国家。
Sarah: And what does your mother do?	萨拉：那你母亲是做什么的？
Oliver: She's a head teacher.	奥利弗：她是一位校长。
Sarah: That's nice.	萨拉：那太棒了。
Oliver: Yeah. She'll be here today!	奥利弗：是的。她今天会在这儿！
Sarah: Do you want to be a head teacher, too?	萨拉：你也想成为一名校长吗？
Oliver: No, I want to be a businessman.	奥利弗：不，我想成为一名商人。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

1. —What does he do? 他是做什么的？

—He's a businessman. 他是一名商人。

询问职业的问句：What do/does + 主语 + do? 同义句为：What + be + 某人？也可以是：What + be + one's + job?

答语：主语 + be + 职业单词。

例句：—What does your father do/What is your father/What's your father's job?

你父亲是做什么的？

—He is a taxi driver. 他是一个出租车司机。

2. I want to be a businessman. 我想成为一名商人。

①本句为表达将来想要从事的职业的句子，相当于 I'm going to be a businessman. 结构为：主语 + want（s） + to be + a/an + 职业名词. = 主语 + be + going to + be + a/an + 职业名词。

②询问某人将来要从事什么职业的句型（也就是本句的职业名词被画线提问时）用：What + do/does + 主语 + want to be? = What + be + 主语 + going to be?

例句：—What do you want to be/What are you going to be? 你将来想做什么？

—I want to be a teacher. 我想成为一名教师。

= I'm going to be a teacher.

3. —Is your father a postman? 你爸爸是邮递员吗？

—No, he isn't. 不，他不是。

“Be 动词 + 主语 + 职业名词？”是常见的询问某人是否从事某种职业的句型。句中的 be 动词要随主语的变化而变化。

肯定回答：Yes, 主语 + be 动词.

否定回答：No, 主语 + be 动词 + not.

例句：—Is your sister a doctor? 你姐姐是医生吗？

—No, she isn't. 不，她不是。

美国人对不同职业的态度是什么样？

美国人对职业的高低贵贱之分不像国内那样严重，普通劳动者几乎都在自信地工作着，他们并不觉得自己低人一等。中学老师在暑假里会出去卖雪糕、擦车赚零花钱，开学时还会骄傲地向同事和学生“炫耀”挣了多少钱。企业老板的儿子在加油站做临时工，遇见熟人也会表现得很自然甚至有些得意。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

我的词汇

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. fisherman 渔民
2. scientist 科学家
3. pilot 飞行员
4. coach 教练

二、我要掌握的句型

1. —Where does he work? 他在哪儿工作？
   —He works at sea. 他在海上工作。
2. How does he go to work? 他怎么去上班？

我的会话

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
Mike: My uncle is a fisherman.	迈克：我的叔叔是一个渔民。
Xiao Yu: Where does he work?	小余：他在哪儿工作？
Mike: He works at sea. He sees lots of fish every day!	迈克：他在海上工作。他每天会看见许多鱼！
Xiao Yu: I see. How does he go to work? By boat?	小余：我明白了。他怎样去上班？划船？
Mike: No. He works on a boat. He goes to work by bike.	迈克：不。他在船上工作。他骑自行车上班。
Xiao Yu: He has a very healthy life.	小余：他有一个很健康的生活方式。
Mike: Yes. He works very hard and stays healthy.	迈克：是的。他努力工作并保持健康。
Xiao Yu: We should study hard and stay healthy, too.	小余：我们也应该努力学习并保持健康。

我的语法

1. Where does he work? 他在哪儿工作？

   问句："Where + do/does + 某人 + work?" 是由 where 引导的特殊疑问句，用来询问某人在哪里工作。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

答句：主语 + work/works + 介词短语，介词短语由“介词 + 地点”构成，如：in a hospital 在医院里，in a factory 在工厂里，in a school 在学校里。

例句：—Where does Mary work? 玛丽在哪儿工作？

—She works in a hospital. 她在一家医院工作。

2. How does he go to work? 他怎么去上班？

问句：How + do/does + 主语 + go（to）+ 其他？这是询问某人出行方式的句子。

答句：主语 + go/goes（to）+ 其他 +（表示出行方式的）介词短语. 或直接用介词短语。

例句: —How does your grandma go to the park? 你奶奶怎么去公园？

—She goes to the park by bus. /By bus. 她乘公交车去公园。/坐公交车。

如果 go 后面的词为副词，则 to 要省略。如：go home 回家。

如何介绍家庭成员的“工作”

一、思维步骤：

1. 搭建主体结构：介绍家庭成员的工作，可采取总分总的结构。先总体介绍家庭，然后分别介绍家人工作，最后抒发感情。
2. 列出提纲：

①家庭成员都有谁？father/mother...

②从事的工作都是什么？postman/teacher...

③怎样去上班？by bus/on foot....

3. 确定时态：把一般现在时态作为主时态，添枝加叶，连词成句，连句成篇。

二、精彩词句：

1. 开篇句：I have a happy family. /There are three people in my family.
2. 常用句式：My ... is a ... He/She goes to work ...
3. 结尾句：I love my family. Do you like it? What about your family?

三、经典范文：

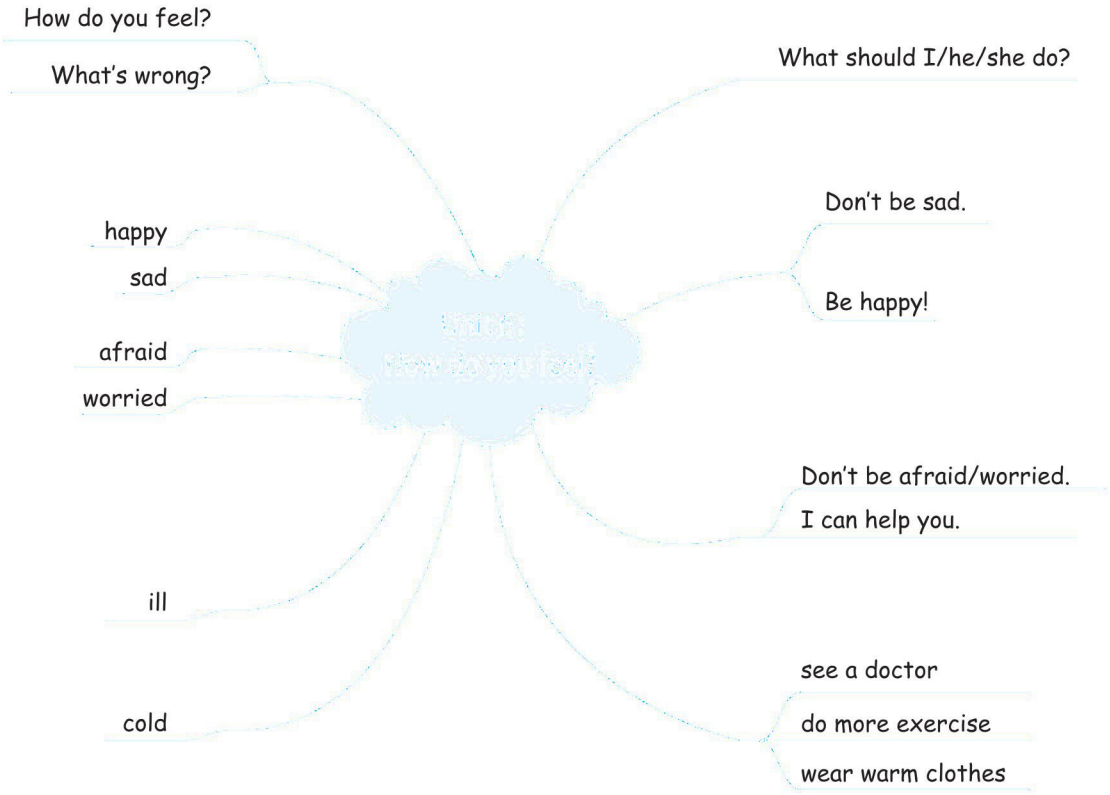
My Family

Hello! My name is John. I have a happy family. There are three people in my family. They are my father, my mother and me. My father is a doctor. He works in a hospital. He works very hard. He goes to work by subway. My mother is a teacher. She works in a school. She teaches maths. She goes to school by bus. I'm a student. I often go to school on foot. I love my family. Do you like yours? What about your family?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 6 How do you feel?

☆ 单元知识结构图



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多习资料

Part A

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. angry 生气的
2. afraid 害怕
3. sad 难过的
4. worried 担心的；发愁的
5. happy 高兴的
6. mice（mouse 的复数）老鼠
7. bad 邪恶的；坏的

二、我要掌握的句型

1. They're afraid of him. 它们害怕他。
2. The cat is angry with them. 这只猫对它们很生气。
3. Sarah is angry. 萨拉很生气。

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
Sam: What's this cartoon about?	萨姆：这个动画片是关于什么的？
Sarah: It's about a cat. The cat is a police officer.	萨拉：关于一只猫。这只猫是警察。
Sam: Cool!	萨姆：酷！
Sarah: He chases the mice. They're afraid of him.	萨拉：他追赶老鼠。它们害怕他。
Sam: Why?	萨姆：为什么？
Sarah: Because the mice are bad. They hurt people. The cat is angry with them.	萨拉：因为老鼠很坏。它们伤人。这只猫对它们很生气。
Sam: Maybe our cat is chasing a mouse now!	萨姆：或许我们的猫现在正在追赶一只老鼠！

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

1. They're afraid of him. 它们害怕他。

be afraid of 对……害怕，be 根据主语人称和数的变化而变化。

例句：I am afraid of my maths teacher.

我害怕我的数学老师。

Lucy is afraid of her. 露西害怕她。

of 后接名词或人称代词的宾格形式。

2. The cat is angry with them. 这只猫很生它们的气。

be angry with 对……生气

用法：be 根据主语人称和数的变化而变化，with 后接名词或人称代词的宾格形式。同义词组：get angry with。

例句：I broke the cup. My mother is angry with me.

我打碎了杯子。妈妈对我很生气。

3. Sarah is angry. 萨拉很生气。

句型：主语 + be 动词 + 表示心情的形容词。be 动词随着主语的变化而变化。

例句：I am happy when I watch football games.

当我看足球比赛时，我很高兴。

中西方交际中的文化差异

西方人乐于赞美别人，同时也乐于接受别人的赞美，而中国人为了显示谦恭，常常会“拒绝”他人的赞美。这种“拒绝”会让外国人觉得莫名其妙，好像你不领他的情似的。

还有，中国人出于礼貌，总是会说些关心他人的话。我们常喜欢对客人说：“You must be tired. Have a good rest.”（您一定很累吧。好好休息一下。）然而，这样普通的问候语有时候可能会让西方人误解为你在“盘问”他们的身体状况，他们也许会发怒。

中国人认为对家里人或者好朋友的帮助根本不必说谢谢，说了反而显得生分。而外国人对家人或者朋友的帮忙都习惯说谢谢，他们期待听到“谢谢”或者“请”之类的礼貌用语。所以，和外国人相处，千万不要吝啬“谢谢”两个字。“谢”少了只会让外国人觉得你羞涩且不懂礼貌。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. see a doctor 看病
2. wear 穿
3. more 更多的
4. deep 深的
5. breath 呼吸
6. take a deep breath 深深吸一口气
7. count 数数
8. count to ten 数到十
9. hear 听见
10. ant 蚂蚁
11. sit 坐
12. stuck 陷住；无法移动

二、我要掌握的句型

1. What's wrong? 怎么了？
2. He should see a doctor this morning. 他今天早上应该去看病。
3. Don't be sad. 别伤心。
4. How does Dad feel now? 爸爸现在感觉怎么样？

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
Mum : Sarah, Sam, come here, please.	妈妈：萨拉，萨姆，请过来。
Sarah: What's wrong?	萨拉：怎么了？
Mum : Your father is ill. He should see a doctor this morning, so we can't go to the zoo today.	妈妈：你们的父亲生病了。他今天早上应该去看病，所以我们今天不能去动物园了。
Sam : Oh, no!	萨姆：哦，不！
Mum : Don't be sad. We can go next time.	妈妈：别伤心。我们可以下次去。
Sam : How does Dad feel now?	萨姆：爸爸现在感觉怎么样？
Mum : Not well. Let's go to the hospital.	妈妈：不好。我们去医院吧。

三、我要掌握的句型

1. What's wrong? 怎么了？

本句型常被用于询问出了什么问题，发生了什么事。如果要是问“某人发生了什么事”，则要用句型“What's wrong with sb.?”

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

例句：—What's wrong with Amy? 埃米怎么了？
—She catches a cold. 她感冒了。

2. He should see a doctor this morning. 他今天早上应该去看病。
should意为“应该，应当”，是情态动词，后面接动词原形，没有人称和数的变化。
例句：He should count to ten and take a deep breath. 他应该数到十，再做一个深呼吸。
总结：给他人提建议或意见的常见句型还有：
What/How about...? 怎么样？
Why not/Why don't you...? 为什么不……呢？
Would you like to...? 你愿意……吗？
You need to... 你需要……

3. Don't be sad. 别伤心。
这是一个表示否定含义的祈使句。“Don't + be + 情绪类形容词”意为“不要……”，表示安慰或者鼓励等。
例句：Don't be sad. You can do better next time. 别伤心。下次你会做得更好。

4. How does Dad feel now? 爸爸现在感觉怎么样？
用法：How + do/does + 某人 + feel? 用来询问他人的身体状况或心情如何，常用“主语 + feel/feels + 形容词.”或“主语 + be + 形容词.”来回答。
例句：—How does she feel? 她感觉怎么样？
—She feels angry. = She is angry. 她很生气。

如何写“心情类”小作文

一、思维步骤：
1. 思考主题，想一件事能用到表示心情的词语。
2. 描述事件相关的人物、经过及结果，过程中实时插入心情的描述。
3. 整理列出内容，排列成句，连句成篇。

二、精彩词句：
1. 心情类词汇：happy, sad, angry, afraid, worried...
2. 动作类短语：get up, play computer games...
3. 句式：主语 + be + 表示情绪的形容词。I am very sad and angry. But I count to ten and take a deep breath...

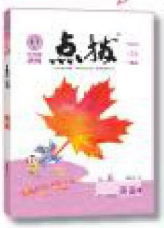
三、经典范文：

Today is the weekend. I am very happy. I get up late. So I'm very hurgry. When I go to the living room, I can't see my two apples. I know my sister ate them. I am very angry. But I count to ten and take a deep breath. Then my sister says “I'm sorry” to me. We play computer games together. We are very happy.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

荣德基品质教辅推荐

同步讲解



《点拨》助力家校联动，畅享方法学习

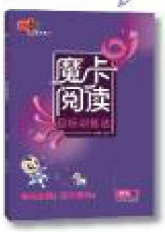
——家庭学习的必备手册

课前高效预习 导知目标、导读教材、导学基础、导问疑惑。
—— 提供读者全环节高效的预习指南

课后巩固复习 批注重难、研学方法、精析典例、解答疑惑。
—— 提供读者全方位批注式复习学案

期末复习备考 总结必记、归纳考点、整合专题，详解考题。
—— 提供读者全维度期末速提分策略

同步阅读



《魔卡阅读》让阅读和您的教学分秒同步

——素养阅读的导学案

同步阅读 与教材单元同步、与精读课文同步、与主题要素同步。
—— 与您教学分秒同步

方法阅读 教授方法、示例方法、批注方法、练透方法、沉淀方法。
—— 方法系统学习学案

批注阅读 好词好句批注、语文要素批注、质疑反思批注，立德树人批注。
—— 批注式教学好教案

同步口算



《星级口算天天练》口算选黄皮儿，豆点陪伴你！

口碑爆棚：黄皮儿带豆点的《星级口算天天练》！
课时好用：课时同步教学，新授、复习、易错环环相扣！
口算专业：常规算、变式算、应用算，三位一体算得倍儿爽！
检查方便：拍照即可判对错，老师家长都叫好！

同步试卷



《好卷》大卷同步达标，小卷期末领先

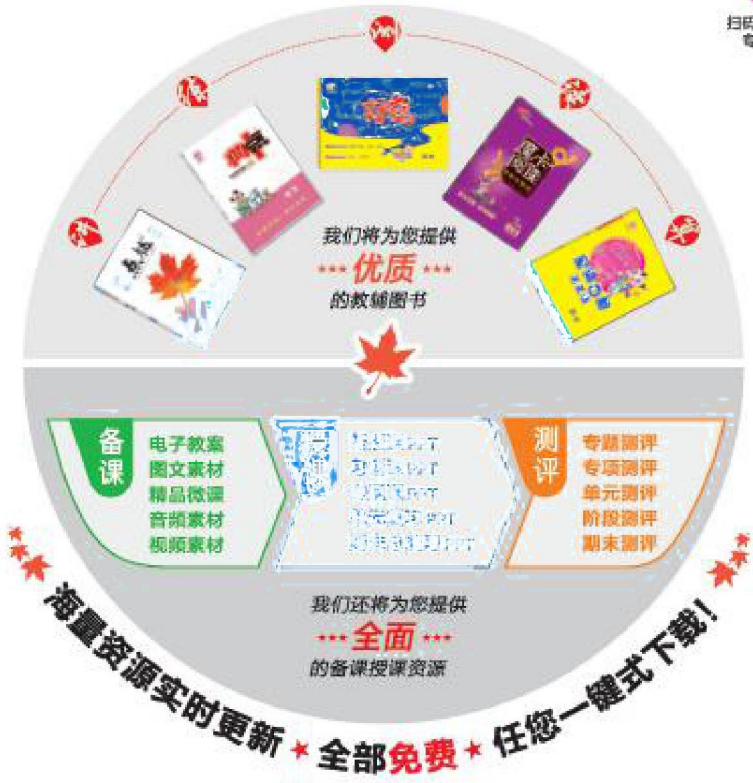
跟踪国家教改方向，聚焦最新命题趋势。
夯实基础，才是硬道理。
突破重点，习得好方法。
梳理考点，全面不遗漏。
演练真题，考出好成绩。



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

封面设计：典点瑞泰





荣德基官方网站:
http://www.rudder.com.cn
荣德基天猫旗舰店:
http://rongdeji.tmall.com
客服热线：182 1039 5892

荣德基小学频道
获取最新教育资讯

登录荣德基官网
免费下载听力

本书导学号
1423494

本书为赠品
与本书配套的学生用书(已出版)定价为37.90元。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料